Oracle® Applications

Upgrading Oracle Applications

Release 11*i*

October 2000

Part No. A87325-01

ORACLE®

Upgrading Oracle Applications, Release 11*i*

Part No. A87325-01

Release 11*i*

Copyright © 1996, 2000, Oracle Corporation. All rights reserved.

Author: Carole Eubanks

Contributing Authors: Jill Arehart, Dawn Austin, Daryl Breen, Janet Buchbinder, Steve Carter, Siu Change, Gail D'Aloisio, Steve Damiani, Taite Darlington, Michelle Fields, Brian Gause, Janis Greenberg, Rachel Haas, Elizabeth Looney, Julia Margaretson, Joseph Murphy, Kent Noble, Michael O'Shea, Kristin Penaskovic, Christina Ravaglia, Susan Saperstein, Richard Sears, Yun Shaw, Milly Wang

Contents

2 Category 1 — Before You Receive the Software

3 Category 2 — After You Receive the Software

5   Category 4 — Before Using Oracle Applications

6   Category 5 — Before Using Your Products

7 Category 6 — Before Using Product Features

8 Finishing Your Upgrade

Index

Send Us Your Comments

Upgrading Oracle Applications, Release 11*i*

Part No. A87325-01

Oracle Corporation welcomes your comments and suggestions on the quality and usefulness of this document. Your input is an important part of the information used for revision.

- Did you find any errors?
- Is the information clearly presented?
- Do you need more information? If so, where?
- Are the examples correct? Do you need more examples?
- What features did you like most?

If you find any errors or have any other suggestions for improvement, please indicate the document title and part number, and the chapter, section, and page number (if available). You can send comments to us in the following ways:

- Electronic mail: apps_relgrp_us@oracle.com
- FAX: 650.506.1113   Attn: Oracle Applications Release Group
- Postal service:
  Oracle Corporation
  Oracle Applications Release Group
  500 Oracle Parkway, M/S 3op4
  Redwood Shores, CA 94065
  U.S.A.

If you would like a reply, please give your name, address, telephone number, and (optionally) electronic mail address.

If you have problems with the software, please contact your local Oracle Support Services.

x

Preface

Upgrading Oracle Applications describes all the steps for preparing your products for an upgrade to Release 11*i* from Release 10.7 (NCA, SmartClient, or character-mode) or Release 11.0. It also tells you how to finish your upgrade after you run AutoUpgrade (formerly known as AutoInstall).

> **Note:** This manual, and any other documentation associated with this release, was current as of the time it was published and released. However, we make enhancements to Oracle Applications products and respond to user needs on a continuing basis. Always check Oracle*MetaLink* for the most up-to-date information. The *Oracle Applications Release Notes, Oracle Applications Installation Update,* and *Oracle Applications NLS Release Notes* are available only on Oracle*MetaLink*.

> **Note:** If you are using Release 10.7 (NCA, SmartClient, or character-mode) or Release 11.0 of Oracle Applications, you may upgrade directly to Release 11*i*. You cannot upgrade to Release 11*i* directly from releases *prior* to 10.7.

How to Use This Guide

In Release 11, the upgrade steps were organized by product, so each product had a separate chapter. In Release 11*i*, we reorganized *Upgrading Oracle Applications* to simplify the planning and execution of your upgrade by arranging the steps by *category,* not by product.

There are six step categories, divided into two main types:

Upgrade Preparation Steps

You perform upgrade preparation steps (also known as *pre-upgrade* steps) before you run AutoUpgrade.

Category 1: Steps to perform before using the new software

These steps require nothing from the software and do not prevent you from continuing to use your products. You will need only this manual and your product-specific Oracle Applications Release 11*i* user's guides as reference.

Category 2: Steps that require the new software

These steps require files contained on the Oracle Applications software CD, or on Oracle*Metalink*. You can continue to use your products at the *existing* release level after you run these steps.

Category 3: Steps to perform just before running AutoUpgrade

Run these steps just prior to running AutoUpgrade, after all users have logged off. Once you begin to perform Category 3 steps, you cannot use your products until you have run AutoUpgrade and completed the Category 4 steps.

Upgrade Finishing Steps

You perform the upgrade finishing steps (also known as *post-upgrade* steps) after you have run AutoUpgrade. When performing upgrade finishing steps for multiple databases that share the same admin file system, you should run each from $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out instead of $APPL_TOP/admin/out so the output from each does not overwrite others. NT users should run the steps from %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out.

Category 4: Steps to run before using Oracle Applications

These steps affect the entire Oracle Applications system and must be completed before any user logs on or attempts to use any portion of the installation.

Category 5: Steps to run before using the application

These steps affect specific Oracle Applications products. You must complete the steps in this category before using the associated product.

Category 6: Steps to run before using a certain feature

You can sign on to an Oracle Applications product but cannot use certain features until you perform these steps. The summary box for each step indicates which feature (or features) the step prepares for use.

> **Attention:**   After you finish these steps, review the associated product implementation or setup manual to ensure that you have completely implemented the new features you plan to use.

Finishing Your Upgrade

Some steps can be performed only after all Category 4, 5, and 6 steps have been successfully completed and after you have verified that the entire upgrade was successful.

> **Note:**   It is important to remember that your product-specific implementation manuals and Oracle*MetaLink* may have information about your upgrade that is not included in this manual. They are valuable sources of information and should be consulted before you begin the upgrade.

> **Attention:**   Commercial and government versions of products, such as Oracle General Ledger and Oracle Public Sector General Ledger, are covered in the same chapter. All information in the chapter applies to both the commercial and the public sector versions unless noted otherwise.

Registry Variables and Environment Variables

The NT registry is the primary data store for the NT system environment. Applications programs (including the AD utilities) look in the registry to determine the value of Applications variables. However, for the sake of convenience, you can use environment variables. Registry variables are superseded by environment variables of the same name.

The examples in this manual assume that you are using a command prompt syntax and environment variables (since registry variables cannot be typed directly on the command line). If an example makes reference to an environment variable %<var_ name>%, first check to see if it is set in the environment:

```
C:\> echo %<var_name>%
```

For example, if your <var_name> is GL_TOP, and echo %GL_TOP% returns a valid pathname, you can use GL_TOP on a command line:

```
C:\> cd %GL_TOP%\admin\sql
```

If <var_name> is not defined in the environment, you have two options:

Run adregenv.exe:
1. Run adregenv.exe to copy all the registry variables under the <APPL_CONFIG> key into a .cmd file (called apps.cmd in the APPL_TOP directory).

2. Run apps.cmd to create environment variables that correspond to the registry variables.

The environment variable <var_name> can now be expanded on the command line using %<var_name>%.

Run regedt32.exe:
Use regedt32.exe to examine the value of <var_name> and substitute this value on the command line.

Performing Upgrade Steps

Each step category contains all similarly timed steps for all products, which reflects the actual process you follow when performing an upgrade. You must complete all applicable steps in a category before you start the steps in the next category. After you complete the Category 3 steps, you run AutoUpgrade (formerly called AutoInstall) to upgrade the database. From the time you start the Category 3 steps, through running AutoUpgrade, and until you complete all the Category 4 steps, your entire Oracle Applications system will be unavailable to users. It is, therefore, important to complete all Category 1 and 2 steps, run a test upgrade on a test system, and schedule the critical system downtime before proceeding with Category 3.

The chapters in this book are as follows. It also contains an index.

Chapter 1   Provides an overview of the upgrade process, including information about the various automated upgrade utilities. Presents a list of important considerations that you should pay special attention to.

Chapter 2 – 4	Describes all Category 1, Category 2, and Category steps, respectively. Include steps that apply to your database and to individual products.
Chapter 5 – 7	Describes all Category 4, Category 5, and Category 6 steps, respectively. Chapter 5 includes steps that apply to your database and to individual products. Chapters 6 and 7 includes steps that apply to individual products — database steps are not necessary at this point in the upgrade.
Chapter 8	Discusses upgrade steps that must be performed after you have finished and verified your upgrade.
Index	An alphabetical listing of references to topics in this manual. A product code in each entry indicates the product where you will perform the indexed step. For example, *parameters, verifying (WIP)* points to a step in the Oracle Work in Process chapter.

Character-mode Menus

This manual was written for users who are upgrading from either character-mode or GUI Release 10.7 installations. However, unless otherwise noted, the navigation paths in the step-by-step instructions assume that you are upgrading from a GUI version of Oracle Applications. Character-mode users should refer to the *Oracle Applications Character Mode to GUI Menu Path Changes* reference manual for the character-mode equivalents of the GUI menu paths.

More Information about Steps

In addition to the categories, we have noted whether the step is required, conditionally required, or recommended.

Required	You must perform this step for a successful upgrade.
Conditionally required	Read this step and decide whether it applies to your upgrade, for example, a step that is required for a customized feature or configuration. If the condition does not apply to your installation, you do not have to perform the step.

Recommended	An optional step that you should read and understand so that you can decide whether it is in your best interest to perform it. For example, if performing an action can substantially reduce the time it takes to run an upgrade script, we "recommend" that you do so.

Step Summary Lines

Each step begins with a heading that gives the step number and step title. Below this are summary lines that indicate information such as which release this step applies to, who performs the step, whether you need a user's guide to carry out the instructions, whether users must log off the product while the step is being performed, and so on. For example:

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payroll)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Payroll User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

In addition, the step summary lines for some products *may* contain other information that is unique to that product. For example:

Perform for this country: **Brazil**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

Perform for each product group: **Yes**

Note that you perform the steps *only* for the release level that corresponds to your installation.

Conventions

We recommend that you review the following conventions used in this manual.

Convention	Meaning
Monospace text	Represents command line text. Type this text exactly as shown.
< >	Text enclosed in angle brackets represents a variable. Substitute an appropriate value for the variable text. Do not type the brackets.
[ ]	Square brackets enclose optional items or indicate a function key. Do not type the brackets.
|	A vertical bar represents an *or* option among several options. You must enter only one of the options. Do not type the vertical bar.

Convention	Meaning
/directory or \directory	A slash before a directory name indicates that it is a subdirectory. The path name may be either uppercase or lowercase.
$ or C:\>	Represents the command prompt. Your prompt may differ.
\	In examples of commands you type online, a backward slash at the end of a line signifies that you must type the entire command on one line. *Do not type the backslash.*

Special notes alert you to particular information within the body of the manual.

Additional Information:	Refers you to portions of this manual, another manual, or the online documentation. All references to other manuals refer to the most recent version of that manual, unless otherwise noted.
Attention:	Alerts you to important information that will help you use the system.
Note:	Highlights helpful hints and practical tips that can save time and make installation or other procedures easier.
Warning:	Warns of actions which, if not carried out properly, could be damaging or destructive to your operations.

Note: In this manual, Network Computing Architecture (NCA) is now known as Internet Computing.

Warnings

Pay close attention to all warnings that discuss when and where you run upgrade steps. Carefully coordinating your upgrade preparation work across the different products will avoid errors.

Shared Products

You typically perform upgrade steps only for the products you have fully installed. However, you may need to perform upgrade steps for some products if they are installed as shared (dependent) products. Take note of shared product steps you need to perform according to your system implementation. To determine the dependent products you have installed, run adutconf.sql from the sql directory in AD_TOP.

Inactive or Partially Implemented Installed Products

You must perform the upgrade steps for every installed product regardless of which products you actually use. For example, if you have Oracle Human Resources (Oracle Personnel) fully installed but only partially implemented, you must still perform the Oracle Human Resources upgrade preparation steps.

All products are installed in the database. Therefore, some steps, like dropping obsolete objects after the upgrade is complete, must be performed for all products.

EMM Advantage

The EasiPath Migration Method (EMM Advantage) offers a methodology for upgrading Oracle Applications. Produced by Oracle Corporation, EMM Advantage helps you structure and manage your upgrade project.

A comprehensive migration toolkit, EMM Advantage is a tested framework for quality migrations. It includes the Oracle EasiPath Migration Method (EMM), a proven, structured approach used successfully worldwide by Oracle consultants, and Project Management Method (PJM), a standardized Oracle approach to project management. The EMM Advantage toolkit, in combination with your skills, experience, and business knowledge, will ensure a higher-quality migration and lead you to business results faster. It is available from the Oracle Direct Marketing group in your country, or you can contact your local Oracle Sales Representative.

Intended Audience

This manual is written for the persons who are responsible for upgrading Oracle Applications. In it, we assign upgrade steps to the following roles. You will note that the role names and descriptions correspond to the ones used in the Oracle upgrade methodology—EMM Advantage.

Application Specialist

Provides knowledge and guidance regarding application functionality. This person also supports and provides interpretation for tools, templates, and methods.

Database Administrator

Installs and configures the Oracle database and maintains database access controls. This person provides consultation on performance, and is responsible for monitoring growth and fragmentation of the production database and ensuring database backup and recovery.

System Administrator

Responsible for administering the development system. This person's responsibilities include:

- Ensuring that hardware is correctly configured

- Installing, configuring, and maintaining operating and development software

- Ensuring that the system is backed up daily

- Designing and maintaining system security—for example, establishing system accounts.

The system administrator provides first-line support for problems with the development system and ensures that faults are quickly rectified. This person may perform the setup and initial maintenance of the production system or advise the client's operational staff on these tasks. The system administrator works with the project team to optimize system performance. They also install packaged applications environments and convert data.

Technical Specialist

Responsible for designing, developing, unit testing, implementing, and maintaining the custom extensions for the Oracle applications. These extensions include, but are not limited to, modules—such as interfaces, automated data conversions, reports, forms, and enhancements.

IS Manager

Directs the client information systems organization within a business. The IS manager acts as a business line manager for the staff in the IS organization. This person is responsible for the technical infrastructure of a business, including decisions about purchases, in-house development, and operational maintenance and support. The following information system staff report directly or indirectly to the IS manager:

- application and technical architect

- technical analyst

- designer

- technical (database, network, system) administrator

- operations staff

- support staff

The IS manager defines the information systems strategy for a corporation and puts the strategy into practice through standards, policies, practices, and information systems selection processes.

Products in this Release

The following table lists the abbreviations for Oracle Applications products arranged within their respective product family, based on the way you will choose the products during your upgrade. Under each product family, it lists the product name and the product short name.

You need Oracle Applications usernames and passwords to run the upgrade steps. This manual uses product short names enclosed in angle brackets (< >) to indicate when you must supply the product's username and password. For example, the notation <GL username>/<GL password> means you must supply the Oracle General Ledger username and password combination. By default, and unless noted, the schema name and password are the same as the application short name.

> **Note:** This manual does not contain upgrade tasks for all products in this list. Some can be upgraded without manual steps. Others are new in this release, or are planned for a future release.

Product Family	Short Name	Product Name
Applications Technology	AD	Applications DBA
	AK	Oracle Common Modules
	ALR	Oracle Alert
	AU	Applications Utilities
	AZ	Application Implementation Wizard
	FND	Application Object Library
	ICX	Self-Service Web Applications
	SHT	Shared Technology
CRM	AMS	Marketing
	AMV	Marketing Encyclopedia System
	AS	Oracle Sales and Marketing
	ASF	Field Sales
	ASG	Gateway for Mobile Devices
	ASO	Order Capture

Product Family	Short Name	Product Name
	AST	TeleSales
	BIC	Customer Intelligence
	BIL	Sales Intelligence
	BIM	Marketing Intelligence
	BIX	Call Center Intelligence
	CCT	Telephony Manager
	CN	Oracle Sales Compensation
	CS	Oracle Service
	CSC	Customer Care
	CSD	Depot Repair
	CSF	Field Service
	CSP	Spares Management
	CSR	Scheduler
	CSS	Support
	CUA	CRL Financials - Assets
	CUF	CRL Financials
	CUI	CRL Supply Chain - Inventory
	CUN	CRL Supply Chain - NATS
	CUP	CRL Supply Chain - Purchasing
	CUS	CRL Supply Chain
	FPT	TeleBusiness for Financial Services
	IBA	iMarketing
	IBE	iStore
	IBP	iBill and Pay
	IBU	iSupport
	IBY	iPayment
	IEB	Interaction Blending
	IEM	eMail Center
	IEO	Call Center Technology
	IES	Scripting
	IEU	Universal Work Queue
	IEX	Collections

Product Family	Short Name	Product Name
	IPA	CRL Financials - Projects
	JTF	CRM Foundation
	ME	Maintenance, Repair, and Overhaul
	MWA	Mobile Applications
	OKC	Contracts Core
	OKS	Contracts Service Module
	OKX	Contracts Integration
	OZF	Funds & Budgets
	OZP	Trade Planning
	OZS	iClaims
	XDP	SDP Provisioning
	XNC	Sales for Communications
	XNM	Marketing for Communications
	XNP	SDP Number Portability
	XNS	Service for Communications
Financials	ABM	Activity-based Management
	AP	Oracle Accounts Payable
	AR	Oracle Accounts Receivable
	AX	Global Accounting Engine
	BSC	Balanced Scorecard
	CE	Oracle Cash Management
	EAA	SEM Exchange
	EVM	Value-based Management
	FA	Oracle Assets
	FEM	Strategic Enterprise Management
	FII	Financial Intelligence
	FRM	Report Manager
	FV	Federal Financials
	GL/RG	Oracle General Ledger
	PA	Oracle Projects
	PN	Property Manager
	RG	Report Generator

Product Family	Short Name	Product Name
	XLA	Common Accounting Modules
	XTR	Treasury
Human Resources	BEN	Benefits
	DT	DateTrack
	FF	FastFormula
	GHR	Government Human Resources
	HRI	Human Resources Intelligence
	HXC	Time Capture
	HXT	Time Management
	OTA	Human Resources (Training)
DT, FF, GHR, PAY, PER, PQH, PQP in HR schema	PAY (default=HR)	Human Resources (Payroll)
	PER (default=HR)	Oracle Human Resources (Personnel)
	PQH	Public Sector HR
	PQP	Public Sector Payroll
	SSP	Oracle Statutory Sick Pay
Country-specific Financials	JA	Financials for Asia/Pacific
	JE/JG	Financials for Europe
	JG	Regional Financials
	JL	Oracle Financials for Latin America
Manufacturing / Distribution	BIS	Business Intelligence System
	BOM	Oracle Bills of Material
	CHV	Oracle Supplier Scheduling
	CRP	Oracle Capacity
in BOM schema	CST	Oracle Cost Management
	CZ	Oracle Product Configurator
	EC	Oracle e-Commerce Gateway
	ECX	Oracle XML Gateway
	ENG	Oracle Engineering
	ENI	Engineering Intelligence
	FLM	Flow Manufacturing

Product Family	Short Name	Product Name
	INV	Oracle Inventory
	ISC	Supply Chain Intelligence
	MFG	Manufacturing Menu
	MRP	Master Scheduling
	MSC	Supply Chain Planning
	MSD	Demand Planning
	MSO	Constraint Based Optimization
	OE	Order Entry
	OKE	Contracts for Projects
	ONT	Order Management
	OPI	Operations Intelligence
	PJM	Project Manufacturing
	PO	Oracle Purchasing
	POA	Purchasing Intelligence
	POM	Exchange
	QA	Quality
	QP	Advanced Pricing
	RHX	Advanced Planning Foundation
	RLA	Release Management
	RLM	Release Management
	VEA	Automotive
	VEH	Automotive
	WIP	Work in Process
	WMS	Warehouse Management Systems
	WPS	Manufacturing Scheduling
	WSH	Shipping Execution (Common)
	WSM	Shop Floor Management
Process Manufacturing	GMA	Process Manufacturing Systems
	GMD	Processing Manufacturing Product Development
	GME	Process Manufacturing Process Execution
	GMF	Process Manufacturing Financials

Product Family	Short Name	Product Name
	GMI	Process manufacturing Inventory
	GML	Process Manufacturing Logistics
	GMP	Process Manufacturing Process Planning
	GR	Process Regulatory Management
	PMI	Process Manufacturing Intelligence
Public Sector	GMS	Grants Management
	IGC	Commitment Administration
	IGF	Student Systems Financial Aid
	IGW	Grants Proposal
	PSA	Public Sector Applications
	PSB	Public Sector Budgeting
	PSP	Labor Distribution

Related Documents

All Release 11*i* documentation is included on the *Oracle Applications Document Library* CD, which is supplied in your Release 11*i* CD Pack. You can download some soft-copy documentation from http://docs.oracle.com. Or, you can purchase hard-copy documentation from the Oracle Store at http://oraclestore.oracle.com.

> **Note:** All titles used throughout this manual refer to Release 11*i*, unless otherwise noted. Documentation for pre-upgrade steps generally refers to the manuals associated with the release you are upgrading from.

Specific documentation that you may need in addition to this manual includes the following:

If you are looking for...	See these documents...
New Application features	*Oracle Applications Product Update Notes* Oracle Applications User's Guides Oracle Applications Implementation Manuals *Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications* *Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications* *Supplemental CRM Installation Steps*

If you are looking for...	See these documents...
Database information	*Oracle8i Backup and Recovery* *Oracle8i Reference Guide* *Oracle8i Tuning Guide* *Oracle8i National Language Support Guide*
Installation information	*Installing Oracle Applications* *Maintaining Oracle Applications* *Oracle Applications Installation Update* *Oracle Applications Release Notes* *Oracle Applications NLS Release Notes for Release 11i*
Information about custom development	*Oracle Applications User Interface Standards for Forms-based Products* *Oracle Applications Developers' Guide*
Other information	*Oracle Applications Concepts* *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Manual* *Oracle Self-Service Web Applications Implementation Manual* *Oracle Workflow Guide* *Oracle Applications Character Mode to GUI Menu Path Changes*

1

Overview of an Upgrade

This chapter describes briefly how an upgrade of Oracle Applications works. It tells how to prepare your Oracle Applications file system and technology stack for an upgrade to the current release. It also describes how to prepare your database for the upgrade process. It contains the following sections:

- How an Upgrade Works
- Important Upgrade Considerations

> **Note:** This manual, and any other documentation associated with this release, was current as of the time it was published and released. However, we make enhancements to Oracle Applications products and respond to user needs on a continuing basis. Always check Oracle*MetaLink* for the most up-to-date information. *Oracle Applications Installation Update Notes, Oracle Applications Release Notes,* and *Oracle Applications NLS Release Notes* are available only on Oracle*MetaLink*.

How an Upgrade Works

A successful upgrade of Oracle Applications, and any customizations of Oracle Applications products, involves multiple repetitions of the steps in this book. These repetitions involve planning and testing plans in the form of upgrades until a detailed, verified upgrade path using the steps in this book is accomplished as well as an estimated time for completion. Only after careful and methodical analysis of test upgrades, following the steps in this manual, can a successful Oracle Applications upgrade be accomplished.

> **Additional Information:** See EMM Advantage in the Preface.

Some of the steps you will perform during an upgrade include:

- review the new features listed in the *Product Update Notes* and in the Release 11*i* user's guides and implementation manuals for each of your products.

- plan your upgrade by reading all the steps that apply to your products before you begin. This allows you to determine the most efficient way to prepare for and finish the process for your own unique combination of products.

- run Rapid Install to prepare your file system and technology stack for the upgrade.

- perform pre-upgrade tasks for your database and your products. Remember that if you are licensing a product for the first time in this release, you do not have to perform the pre-upgrade steps.

- run AutoUpgrade to upgrade your database and your products.

- apply appropriate patches, mini-packs, or maintenance packs using AutoPatch.

- perform post-upgrade tasks for your upgraded database and products. You must run Rapid Install again to configure and start your server processes.

- perform upgrade finishing tasks.

The chapters in this book contain all the tasks that are necessary for performing your upgrade, details about each task, and when it should be performed. In addition to the information in this guide, you should pay special attention to instructions included in the readme files of any maintenance packs or patches that you apply as a part of the upgrade.

> **Additional Information:** AutoUpgrade, *Maintaining Oracle Applications;* Finishing your Installation*, Installing Oracle Applications*

Upgrading to Oracle Applications Release 11*i*

This release of Oracle Applications includes many new products, as well as new and reorganized product families, that form the basis of the Oracle E-Business Suite — a 100% Internet-compatible business model. Within this model, Oracle Applications products are differentiated as *ERP* (Enterprise Resource Planning) and *CRM* (Customer Relationship Management). Because many of the new products are built on existing Oracle Applications products, you should pay close attention to the revised product list and the upgrade process. The upgrade includes new tasks that help implement the expanded functionality in Release 11*i.*

In order to successfully complete the upgrade to Release 11*i*, you must first upgrade your existing product base to Oracle Applications Release 11.5, which is the initial phase of the complete Release 11*i* upgrade. Then, apply the maintenance pack that is included on the CDs to complete the full Release 11*i* upgrade. The upgrade task list includes the following steps:

- Perform Category 1, 2, and 3 steps (pre-upgrade steps)

- Run AutoUpgrade

- Apply database patch to bring your database to the current Oracle Applications release level

- Install online help (optional)

- Perform Category 4, 5, and 6 steps (post-upgrade steps)

- Perform product-specific implementation steps as listed in your products user's guides.

- Perform upgrade finishing steps

    > **Note:** If you have an NLS installation, you must retain your original language configuration until the entire upgrade is complete (including the post-upgrade and finishing steps). After you complete the upgrade, you can use the License Manager to change your language configuration.

Upgrading Applications Technology Products

Applications Technology products provide for the infrastructure, core technology, installation, and performance of Oracle Applications as a whole. For example, the Oracle Application Object Library contains common libraries for Oracle Applications that are required by other Applications products. For purposes of this upgrade manual, the Applications Technology products include: Oracle Account Generator (formerly FlexBuilder), Oracle Alert, Application Implementation Wizard, Oracle Application Object Library, Oracle Common Modules, Oracle Self-Service Web Applications, Oracle System Administrator, and Oracle Workflow.

Steps for Applications Technology products are typically listed first. It is *imperative* that you perform these steps in the order listed. If you do not, the success of your upgrade could be compromised.

In Release 11, Oracle Applications introduced Rapid Install (formerly known as One-Hour Install) — a fast, easy method of installing the most up-to-date, certified

version of Oracle Applications along with the required technology stack components. Release 11*i* uses Rapid Install exclusively to create all necessary file systems for both new installations and upgrades. For an upgrade, you use it to create the new file systems for your middle tier components (APPL_TOP and Applications technology stack ORACLE_HOME), and to create the new file system for your database server, if it is on a platform that supports Oracle Applications on the middle tier.

You will continue to use AutoUpgrade (formerly AutoInstall) to perform the upgrade of the Oracle Applications database and data. For complete information about using Rapid Install, refer to *Installing Oracle Applications*.

Important Upgrade Considerations

Release 11*i* contains many new features and enhancements. And, some of the new functionality may affect the way you use your products after you upgrade. Before you begin your upgrade, you should pay special attention to several aspects of the process, as outlined in this section.

> **Note:** For a complete list of changes and enhancements to Oracle Applications in Release 11*i*, you should review the *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes,* Oracle*MetaLink,* and your product implementation manuals and user's guides.

Throughout this book, you may see references to Release 10.7 NCA and to Release 10 SmartClient (10SC) Production 16.1. Please note that these two releases are interchangeable at the database level.

Scheduling Time for Your Upgrade

The best way to know how much time to schedule for your upgrade is to perform a test upgrade of your current Oracle Applications installation, using hardware similar to what you will use for the production upgrade. This experience provides a baseline for upgrade execution times and an opportunity to work out any upgrade issues ahead of time. A test upgrade is especially important if your site has customizations.

During the test upgrade, you can use the Release 11*i* Upgrade Assistant Spreadsheet to gather statistics about the time needed to perform pre- and post- upgrade steps and run AutoUpgrade and AutoPatch. Using this Excel spreadsheet, and this manual, you enter the start and end times as you perform each upgrade step

necessary to complete your test upgrade. The spreadsheet calculates the total time by category, the crucial downtime, and the total upgrade time.

The *crucial downtime* period of an upgrade includes the time it takes to perform all the Category 3 and 4 upgrade steps and the time it takes for AutoUpgrade and AutoPatch to run. During this period, your users will not be able to use Oracle Applications. Using the timing statistics gathered on the Upgrade Assistant Spreadsheet, you can establish a benchmark for subsequent test upgrades and, finally, for the production upgrade. The spreadsheet is included on the *Oracle Applications Documentation* CD. It includes a readme with complete instructions.

Minimizing Upgrade Downtime

In addition to performing a test upgrade, you can use the following proven, effective ways to reduce upgrade downtime:

- Perform all Category 1 and 2 steps before making the system unavailable to end users. Note that we recommend you migrate or upgrade your database to Oracle 8*i* Enterprise Edition Release 8.1.6 in Category 1.

- Use Rapid Install to create the new file systems for your middle tier components (APPL_TOP and Applications technology stack ORACLE_HOME) before performing Category 3 steps. This eliminates the need for many previously required tasks, such as re-linking application executables and generating form, report, and message files.

- Use Rapid Install to create the new file system for your database server. If your data server is on a platform that supports Oracle Applications on the middle tier, then you can use Rapid Install to install the new Oracle8*i* ORACLE_HOME needed by the data server. Otherwise, use the Oracle8*i* Media Pack installation method. See installation documentation for Oracle8*i* for information.

- Ensure sufficient CPU and memory. The upgrade may require more data server horsepower than normal runtime usage. Some customers enjoy performance gains by installing the administration server on a different machine than the data server, thus allowing more CPU to participate in the upgrade.

- Review adt00001.lst and look for long running processes.

- Match batch commit size with your rollback segment sizing. Starting with Release 11.0, many scripts that process potentially large quantities of data accept a parameter that specifies the batch commit size. This parameter is automatically passed by AutoUpgrade to the script based on your response when you started the upgrade. A larger batch commit size processes data more quickly, but requires larger rollback segments.

Protecting Data in Renamed Files

If you have renamed files using the convention of <filename>old, <filename>new, or any other generic designation intended to protect the files from being overwritten by newer versions, it is a good idea to rename these files before you begin the upgrade. Because this convention is used so frequently, by a variety of people with different intentions, the upgrade process may inadvertently overwrite files that you intended to save. Identifying and renaming these files will help ensure a successful upgrade.

Upgrading 10SC Global Demo Database

Data in Production 16 (10SC) Global Demo databases is not supported in Release 11*i*. Pay careful attention to the Common Modules Tasks upgrade steps in Category 3 for more information.

System Requirements

Being familiar with general system requirements as you upgrade to Oracle Applications Release 11*i* will ensure a successful upgrade. Performing an upgrade requires manipulation of the entire data model. Therefore, the requirements for CPU, memory, and disk space (for log files and backups) during an upgrade are typically much larger than those required during runtime.

Because each upgrade is unique, the requirements described in *Installing Oracle Applications* on the documentation CD should be used only as a guideline. The best way to accurately estimate resource requirements is to perform a test upgrade. This allows you to collect valuable system statistics and ensures that you can complete the upgrade within your downtime window.

> **Note:** For a complete list of changes and enhancements to Oracle Applications in Release 11*i*, you should review the *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes,* your product implementation manuals and user's guides, and the information on Oracle*MetaLink.*

CPU

The CPU requirements for upgrading Oracle Applications depend on many factors, including:

- the size of your database

- if you are converting to Multi-Org, the amount of data in the primary product installation group

- the number of operating units for which seed data is being replicated

- the impact of the change from rule-based optimizer to cost-based optimizer (CBO) on your custom code

- the number and duration of long-running processes in Release 11*i* products

See *Maintaining Oracle Applications* for recommendations on the number of workers to use during the upgrade.

Memory

To calculate the memory requirements for upgrading Oracle Applications, you should consider:

- number of forms servers

- number of concurrent users

- infrastructure requirements for internet computing

Release 11*i* uses Oracle8*i* Invoker Rights functionality to reduce upgrade time and data dictionary space requirements for Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC) databases.

> **Additional Information:** Introducing Release 11*i*, *Oracle Applications Concepts*

File System/Technology Stack

All technology stack components underlying Release 11*i* are new. The minimum certification requirements for the initial release of 11*i* are as follows:

- Oracle8*i* Enterprise Edition (8.1.6) with *interMedia* (previously Oracle Context) and Spatial

- Oracle Forms Server, Oracle Reports Server, and Oracle Graphics

- Apache (1.3.9) (8.1.6 Oracle home) with JServ (1.1). NT users will require Apache (1.3.12).

- JRE (Java Runtime Environment) 1.1.8

- Discoverer Server (optional)

- JInitiator (1.1.7) on the PC client

For certification information on subsequent releases, refer to *Installing Oracle Applications.*

If you are upgrading from a character-mode environment to internet computing architecture, there are significant infrastructure considerations. For example, you must understand which type of server in the Oracle Applications architecture requires an installation of each product.

Rapid Install greatly simplifies your upgrade process by performing some of the required upgrade tasks for you. It installs all components including the Applications technology stack, Oracle Applications file systems and environment, and then sets up your database listeners, web listener, web server, forms server, and reports server.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Applications Concepts; Installing Oracle Applications*

Disk Space

To estimate the increase in required disk space for upgrading, you should consider the number of languages being installed and the change in the data model, which, in Release 11*i*, is largely driven by Order Management and Customer Relationship Management (CRM) applications.

Rapid Install installs database files for all products regardless of their licensing status. If the forms and concurrent processing servers are installed on the same machine, some space efficiencies may be achieved. Estimates of the file system sizes in the data model for Release 11*i* are shown in the following table:

Server	File System Size
Forms	2783 MB
Concurrent processing	1211 MB
Web	173 MB
Administration	1423 MB (includes 103 MB for help files)

In addition, some of the files are copied to JAVA_TOP and HTML_TOP, which typically reside outside the APPL_TOP.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Applications Installation Update; Installing Oracle Applications*

Tablespace

You must set up your tablespaces before you upgrade Oracle Applications. Your database administrator should take into account the following types of tablespace:

- SYSTEM tablespace, largely affected by the number of packages and languages

- Rollback segments

- Temporary tablespace

- Product table and index tablespaces, including default tablespace, additional space for languages, and country-specific functionality.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle8i Server Organization and Requirements*; *Oracle Applications Installation Update*

We have provided a script in this release to help you create tablespaces for your new products and resize the tablespace for existing products. You will find details in Step 2, under the Category 2 Database Upgrade Tasks section of this manual.

Long-running Scripts

Certain changes in functionality in Release 11*i* have resulted in long-running scripts, which may require tuning to optimize performance during the upgrade. To identify long-running scripts for your system, review adt00001.lst, which is found in $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out. NT users will find this file in %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out.

Long-running scripts have been identified in the following areas:

- conversion of database from rules-based optimization of SQL queries to cost-based optimization. See CBO upgrade steps in Chapter 5.

- Migrating existing date and non-integer data from character columns to date and number type columns. See Category 5, Global Accounting Engine Tasks for more information.

- certain Oracle Payables conversion scripts

Performance of some upgrade scripts can be significantly improved by changing some database settings for the duration of the upgrade.

hash_area_size (init.ora parameter) Controls the amount of memory that Oracle can use for hash join processing. Oracle recommends a value of 30 MB for the hash area size, provided that the database server has sufficient available memory. You can calculate the maximum amount of memory that can be used for this parameter by

dividing the amount of available memory (after taking into consideration the size of the SGA and the user processes) by the value of the parallel_max_servers.

parallel_max_servers (init.ora parameter) Controls the maximum number of parallel query server processes running in the database. Oracle recommends a value equal to 4 times the number of CPUs.

Temporary tablespace (usually TEMP) Should be created as a locally managed tablespace using the temporary file option with a uniform allocation size. If your temporary tablespace is not defined in this way, you should drop the temporary tablespace and recreate it using the following example as a template:

```
SQL> drop tabalespace TEMP;
SQL> create TEMPORARY tablespace TEMP
     tempfile 'ts_p_temp1.dbf' size 2028M
     EXTENT MANAGEMENT LOCAL
     UNIFORM SIZE 10M;
```

You can verify that the temporary tablespace has been created as described above by executing the following SQL statement:

```
SQL> select CONTENTS,EXTENT_MANAGEMENT,ALLOCATION_TYPE
     from dba_tablespaces
     where tablespace_name='TEMP';
```

The query output should be:

```
CONTENTS       EXTENT_MANAGEMENT    ALLOCATION_TYPE
-----------    -----------------    ---------------
TEMPORARY      LOCAL                UNIFORM
```

After you complete the upgrade successfully, change the settings for the hash_area_size and parallel_max_servers back to the default settings, and restore the previous storage parameters for the temporary tablespace. During the upgrade, use a 10 MB uniform extent size for the temporary tablespace. After a successful upgrade, lower the extent size for the temporary tablespace to a value that is less than 1 MB (for example, 128 K).

Batch Commit Sizes

Batch commit size affects system performance during an upgrade. It determines the number of rows to commit at one time when certain scripts run. When you start AutoUpgrade, it prompts you to enter a batch commit size to be used during the upgrade. If you do not specify a value, AutoUpgrade uses a default batch commit

size, which is set to a relatively small value to accommodate systems with small rollback segments. To take advantage of large rollback segments, you must specify a batch commit size larger than the default value.

Individual products, such as Projects and Inventory, may also have commit size parameters for driver files. Where applicable, you will find these driver files in the admin directory in <PROD>_TOP under the driver subdirectory. Each script includes the specific syntax you must modify for the commit size parameter. Your database administrator can determine the appropriate commit size for each script given the size of your rollback segments.

Environment

Customizing Your Oracle Applications

Customizations made to the file system, database, forms, and reports can have a major impact on an upgrade timeline. The best ways to preserve your customizations and minimize the impact during the upgrade are to:

- develop in accordance with the standards in the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

- document customizations so you can prepare an accurate impact analysis for your upgrade

- track and back up customizations made during the upgrade cycle

If you have customized your Oracle Applications to meet your business needs, you will need to pay special attention to your customized code when you perform an upgrade. The steps in this manual alert you to many of the types of customizations that will require attention. This overview chapter presents some important general considerations in dealing with custom code.

> **Note:** These upgrade instructions assume that you follow the standards for customizing Oracle Applications exactly as described in the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide* and the *Oracle Applications User Interface Standards for Forms-based Products.*

Customizations made by modifying Applications data — changing the specializations of a concurrent manager or modifying an Oracle Applications value set — may be overwritten by AutoUpgrade.

Customizations made by extending Oracle Applications data — defining new concurrent managers or custom responsibilities — are preserved during the upgrade. However, if your custom extension has the same name as a new Oracle component, AutoUpgrade may change or rename it. The pre-upgrade steps provide ways to protect or document customizations, whether by modification or extension. Naming conventions used by AutoUpgrade for custom components such as menus and responsibilities are documented so that you can be sure that you have created a unique name for your extensions.

When AutoUpgrade runs DataMerge on table data, DataMerge uses a specified column (or set of columns) to uniquely identify the row. DataMerge merges the row according to the value of the specified column and the value of the WHO columns (which determine whether Oracle seeded the row or updated it). Customizations to character-mode data, such as SQL*Forms 2.3 menus and the responsibilities that use those menus, are not migrated during the upgrade.

If a row you added in the database conflicts with one defined by Oracle to be inserted in the database, your row is moved out of the way by adding an @ symbol as a prefix to the value of the specified identifying column (if the column is VARCHAR2) or by bumping the ID to greater than 1 million (if the column is not VARCHAR2) before the row that Oracle has defined is inserted. The upgrade process keeps the old row so that you can see what was changed.

> **Additional Information:**   *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Customizing Help Files

This release contains a new online help system. The help files are in HTML format, making them easy to modify using a commercial web browser/editor such as Netscape Communicator. You can also add HTML and GIF files of your own to the help system. For complete information, see the Customizing Oracle Applications Help section of the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*.

> **Attention:**   You should save your pre-upgrade customized help files as a reference. However, you must *recreate* your customizations in the new online system — you cannot reapply your previously customized help files to the Release 11*i*.

Incremental Backups

At notable junctures in the upgrade process, we strongly recommend backing up the database. A backup is a safeguard against unexpected data loss and application upgrade errors. Should your original data become corrupted, you can use the

backup to restore the database. Recommended backup points are noted throughout this manual.

Architecture

This section summarizes only a few of the features of Oracle Applications architecture that affect your upgrade. Before you begin to upgrade your Oracle Applications products, you should read and understand *Oracle Applications Concepts*, which contains a complete discussion of the architecture in this release.

Multiple Organization (Multi-Org) Support

The Vision Demo database is enabled for Multi-Org. However, the production and test databases are not. If you want to use Multi-Org with these databases or an existing upgrade database, log in to the Oracle Applications login account, execute the appropriate environment file, and follow the instructions about using the AD Administration utility to convert to Multi-Org in *Maintaining Oracle Applications*.

> **Additional Information:** *Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications*

Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC)

If you used Multiple Reporting Currencies in Release 11.0 of Oracle Applications, you will need to perform some MRC upgrade tasks to complete the upgrade to Release 11*i*. The tasks are listed in the appropriate chapter(s) in this book.

If you are upgrading from Release 10.7 of Oracle Applications, and you want to use MRC functionality, you will need to perform the MRC setup after you have completed your upgrade to Release 11*i*. You will find complete instructions on implementing MRC in *Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications*.

Internet Computing

Oracle Applications uses internet computing to provide a framework for multi-tiered, distributed computing. Taking advantage of application servers, database servers, and desktop clients working together, it provides a cross-platform, standards-based environment for developing and deploying network-centric applications, such as the Oracle E-Business Suite.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Applications Concepts*

With internet computing, software administration is centralized. Oracle Applications software is installed only on servers, not on client machines. End users

can access Oracle Applications from any Java-enabled desktop client. The desktop clients run standard desktop software and no Applications software, which runs only on application servers resident in central data centers.

Note that upgrading to this architecture from the earlier SmartClient applications is a change in the underlying tool technology, not in the applications code, since Oracle Applications continues to be built using Oracle Developer. Thus, the upgrade process for your custom forms built with Oracle Forms 4.5 involves regenerating the forms, running an Oracle Applications upgrade utility, making minor required changes reported by the Oracle Forms Developer 6*i* compiler and the upgrade utility, and applying some optional updates to take advantage of the new features of Oracle Forms Developer 6*i.*

> **Additional Information:** Customization Standards, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Using Multiple ORACLE Homes

In a multiple-home model, the APPL_TOP directory is associated with two or more Oracle Home directories. The database home contains the files for creating and maintaining the database that holds the Oracle Applications data. The linking home contains library and object files that are read by the AD Relink utility to link Applications programs. Server partitioning of the middle tier is handled by Rapid Install.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Applications Concepts*

Database

Oracle Applications Release 11*i* requires an Oracle8*i* Enterprise Edition 8.1.6.1 database server because some products have dependencies on Oracle8*i* features. This manual contains pre- and post-upgrade steps that are required for an Applications database upgrade or migration.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle8i Server Migration; Oracle8i Utilities*

Migrating or Upgrading your Database

One of the critical steps required for this release is to migrate or upgrade your existing database to Oracle 8*i* Enterprise Edition Release 8.1.6.1. Migrating or upgrading your database can be performed either in Category 1 or in Category 3,

therefore this step is described in this manual as a database upgrade task in *both* places.

> **Note:**   It is important to note that you *do not* have to migrate or upgrade your database twice — if you did so in Category 1, do not perform the migration or upgrade again in Category 3. However, the Category 3 steps contain information not required in Category 1. You should read both sets of steps carefully before you begin.

The migration or upgrade steps differ based on when you perform them. For example, if you upgrade in Category 1, you must apply the appropriate interoperability patch for your Oracle Applications release level so that your 10.7 or 11.0 Applications will continue to work with the 8.1.6 database until you complete the Release 11*i* upgrade. This step is not required if you migrate or upgrade in Category 3.

In addition to other required files, Rapid Install creates a complete Oracle8*i* 8.1.6.1 technology stack. While you may install the database on your own, Oracle recommends that you use this technology stack. In doing so, all scripts will function without need for modification.

Installed vs. Licensed Products

Rapid Install lays down the Oracle Applications file system, and AutoUpgrade upgrades all database objects regardless of license status. When maintaining Oracle Applications, AutoPatch copies only the files appropriate for your APPL_TOP configuration. For example, reports files are not copied into an APPL_TOP that is configured as a forms server. In addition, to save time during patching, AutoPatch does not generate any files for unlicensed products.

Cost-based Optimization (CBO)

Optimization is the process of choosing the most efficient way to execute a SQL statement. In the Oracle8*i* database, and Oracle Applications Release 11*i*, the Oracle optimizer uses cost-based, rather than rule-based, optimization. *Cost-based optimization (CBO)* dynamically determines the most efficient access paths and join methods for executing SQL statements by taking into account statistics such as the size of each table and the selectivity of each query condition. The incorporation of CBO into Release 11*i* improves performance and enables other database features that depend on cost-based optimization.

Release 11*i* represents a transition from rule-based to cost-based optimization. Because CBO is enabled during the AutoUpgrade process, the pre-upgrade steps in this book are rule-based, while steps performed after you run AutoUpgrade (post-upgrade) are cost-based.

You may want to evaluate the impact of CBO on your custom code in your test system before you begin your upgrade.

> **Additional Information:**   Cost-based Optimization, *Oracle Applications Concepts;* Cost-based Optimization in Oracle Applications*, Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide;* The Optimizer, *Oracle8i Concepts*

Dropping Obsolete Columns

During the upgrade process, the Oracle8*i* DROP COLUMN command marks Oracle Applications columns as unused in the data dictionary, making it possible for the system administrator to drop the columns and reclaim the associated space. It is a good idea to plan this reclamation ahead of time with your users because the process locks the associated tables. Once the space is reclaimed, the upgraded data model looks more like a fresh install (except for customizations). Note that DROP COLUMN has no effect on custom columns.

NLS Database Considerations

Each additional language may take up to 200 MB of space in the database. If there is not enough space to accommodate this growth, you will encounter an error during the upgrade or while applying the translations. If you receive an error due to lack of space, simply increase the affected table space and restart the process.

> **Additional Information:**   Managing Tablespaces, *Oracle8i Administrator's Guide*

You must retain your original language configuration until the entire upgrade is complete (including the post-upgrade and finishing steps). After you complete the upgrade, you can use the License Manager to change your language configuration.

Character Sets

If you need to change the character set of your APPL_TOP, you can do so before or after the upgrade. If you choose to change it before the upgrade, make the selection on the appropriate Rapid Install Wizard screen. You must wait until after the upgrade to change the database character set. *The character set of your APPL_TOP must be compatible with the database character set at all times — do not change it before the*

upgrade in anticipation of changing the database character set after the upgrade. Changing character sets in your database is considered an Oracle Consulting solution.

> **Warning:** If you change the character set on the application tier to one that is *not* compatible with the current database character set, your upgraded installation will be not be usable.

Enhanced Multilingual Support

Customer-facing external documents, such as customer invoices and packing slips, are available in the language of the customer's choice. Much application reference information, such as payment terms and units of measure, is multilingual, allowing users to enter and view information in their language of choice.

> **Attention:** If you are installing additional languages to your installation, refer to *Oracle Applications Concepts* for information on supported languages, character sets, character set conversions, unicode character-set support, or flexible dates and numbers. You should familiarize yourself with this information before you begin your upgrade.

Forms and Reports

These forms and reports contain new features.

Upgrade to Oracle Forms Developer 6*i*

If you have custom forms written in SQL*Forms 2.3 in Release 10, you need to rewrite them in Oracle Forms Developer 6*i* according to Oracle Applications standards and then generate the new forms.

If you are upgrading from Release 10SC (SmartClient), Release 10.7, or Release 11.0, and all your custom forms are already in Oracle Forms 4.5, you need to regenerate these custom forms, run the Oracle Applications upgrade utility, and make minor required changes reported by the Oracle Forms Developer 6*i* compiler and the upgrade utility. If you wish to use the new features of Oracle Forms Developer 6*i*, you must supplement your form in accordance with the coding standards in the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide.*

> **Additional Information:** Customization Standards, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Standard Date and Number Formats

In Release 11*i*, all dates and numbers are stored in standard format, which means that no matter how they are input, they will be processed internally in a consistent manner. To support flexible date and Multiple Radix Support, all data stored in Date and Date-time format type value sets must be converted to Standard Date, Standard Date-time, Number, or Character (numbers only) format type value sets using the FNDFFUPG utility.

Flexible Date Formats Oracle Applications supports Flexible Date Format in Forms Developer 6*i*. You can enter and view dates in any valid format, such as 11/25/01 or 11-25-2001. Any format for which SQL provides a mask is valid, and any dates passed to the database are stored canonically with the exception of reports, which always display dates as DD-MON-RRRR . Use the Personal Home page to set up general preferences.

Multiple Radix Support Enter and view numbers in forms using the radix format appropriate to your country of operation, using either the period (full stop) character or comma as the radix. For example, you can enter 1.02 and 100,000.02 or 1,02 and 100.000,02. Oracle8*i* stores all numbers and dates uniformly, and the site level preferences set during installation by Rapid Install determine which character is interpreted as the radix.

SQL*Report (RPT) No Longer Supported

In Release 11, we removed all support for RPT as an execution method. Any programs that use this method will be disabled. If you have customized report programs written using RPT, you must rewrite them using a supported execution method or tool, such as Oracle Reports Developer.

Applications

The information in this section applies specifically to Applications in this release.

Upgrading Order Management and CRM Products

This release contains an improved Release 11*i* upgrade for Oracle Order Management. See *Oracle Applications Release Notes (October 2000)* for instructions on ordering the required minipack. CRM users should contact Oracle Support for instructions.

Upgrading Public Sector Applications Products

The following new and redesigned Public Sector Applications products are included in this release:

- Oracle Public Sector Budgeting

- Oracle Grants Accounting

- Oracle Grants Proposal

- Oracle Labor Distribution

Because these new or redesigned products build on existing Oracle Applications products and add new functionality, each product is installed or upgraded as a mandatory patch, which you must apply as a part of the upgrade process. You apply it (using AutoPatch) immediately after you run AutoUpgrade, not as a finishing step. You should also pay special attention to preparatory or finishing steps that may be included in the product-specific documentation for these products.

FlexBuilder/Account Generator

In Release 10.7, several Oracle Applications products used FlexBuilder to derive account numbers for certain account transactions. In Release 11.0, FlexBuilder was replaced by the Account Generator using Oracle Workflow. This transition affects the following products: Oracle Assets, Oracle Order Entry, Oracle Projects, Oracle Purchasing, Oracle Receivables.

> **Additional Information:**   Overview of the Account Generator, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide; Oracle Workflow Guide*

> **Note:**   References to FlexBuilder apply to Oracle Projects only with respect to project transactions that interface with Oracle Payables and Oracle Purchasing. For other purposes, Oracle Projects continues to use AutoAccounting.

If you used FlexBuilder in Release 10.7 to build Accounting Flexfield code combinations, you need to follow the upgrade steps in this manual. You must have Oracle Workflow installed and set up to use the Account Generator feature. AutoUpgrade installs Oracle Workflow for you. However, you need to complete some additional setup steps after the AutoUpgrade processing is complete. If you plan to customize the Account Generator configuration, you should also install the Oracle Workflow Builder on the desktop client.

Before the upgrade, you need to review the way each product uses the Account Generator to generate Accounting Flexfield code combinations. Consider whether the default Account Generator processes are appropriate for each product, and appropriate for each set of books that uses a unique Accounting Flexfield structure. For each structure and set of books, you can choose to:

■ use the default Account Generator process

■ use the previously customized Release 10.7 FlexBuilder assignment created for Release 11*i* in the upgrade process

■ customize the default Account Generator process

This choice determines which post-upgrade steps your team must perform. The steps for setting up and using the Account Generator are outlined in *Upgrading Oracle Applications*.

AR Seed Data Changes in Release 11.0

To interface draft invoices to Oracle Receivables, Oracle Projects predefines a context for the AR Transaction flexfield. Oracle Projects also pre-seeds a batch source, transaction types, and grouping and ordering rules for Oracle Projects invoices in Oracle Receivables.

In versions of Oracle Projects prior to Release 11.0, the seeded values contained the prefix PA (for Project Accounting). This data was not translatable and not automatically created for a new operating unit in a multiple organization implementation. To overcome these issues, changes were made in Release 11.0 to the Oracle Projects seed data in Oracle Receivables.

Seed Data Type	Old Name	New Name
Transaction Flexfield Context	PA INVOICES	PROJECTS INVOICES
Batch Source	PA INVOICES	PROJECTS INVOICES
Transaction Type	PA Invoice	Projects Invoice
Transaction Type	PA Credit Memo	Projects Credit Memo
Grouping Rules	PA Grouping Rule	Projects Grouping Rule
Ordering Rules	PA Ordering Rule	Projects Ordering Rule

All customers performing a fresh installation of Oracle Projects with Release 11*i* will see only the new data. If you are upgrading to Release 11*i* from Release 10.7, these seed data changes do not apply to your system. However, you will see the new

values (PROJECTS) as well as the old values (PA) that you are accustomed to seeing. You must continue to use *only* the old values. If you create a new operating unit in Release 11*i*, the new data is replicated for the new operating unit.

User-defined Collection Elements

Collection elements Available Quantity, Completed Quantity, and Ship To Location are pre-defined and seeded in Oracle Quality Release 11*i*. If you previously created any user-defined collection elements with these names, they will be renamed with the prefix @ during the upgrade. For example, Available Quantity would become @Available Quantity.

As a result, after the upgrade you will have two collection elements with similar names. When you create collection plans or run reports and queries, you need to consider which collection element you want to use: the Quality-defined collection element or your renamed user-defined collection element.

2

Category 1 — Before You Receive the Software

This chapter describes the upgrade preparation steps (also known as pre-upgrade steps) that you must run to prepare for your Oracle Applications upgrade. We refer to these steps as Category 1 — they require nothing from the new software, and they allow you to continue to use your current Oracle Applications environment.

We recommend that you perform the steps referenced in the following table as soon as you know that you will be upgrading to Release 11*i* of Oracle Applications.

Database Upgrade Steps

Because they affect all Oracle applications, you must perform the steps for the Database Upgrade before you perform Application Technology or product-specific steps.

Database Upgrade Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**1.**	Back up the Oracle Applications database (recommended)	Database Administrator
❏	**2.**	Maintain multilingual tables (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	**3.**	Verify operating system login (required)	System Administrator
❏	**4.**	Rename custom database objects with Applications prefixes (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
❏	**5.**	Migrate or upgrade to Oracle8i Enterprise Edition (conditionally required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
❏	**6.**	Back up Oracle Applications and customizations (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Back up the Oracle Applications database (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Backup and Recovery Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Make a file system backup of the Oracle Applications database to use to restore the database if you encounter problems during the upgrade process.

> **Warning:**   **Shut down the database with the NORMAL option. You may not be able to restore the database from the backup if you use the IMMEDIATE or ABORT option.**

Step 2: Maintain multilingual tables (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Installation, Release 10.7 and Release 11**	Users must log off: **No**

If your Applications use MLS, ensure the validity and accuracy of your multilingual tables by running the option to maintain multi-lingual tables from the Maintain Applications Database Objects menu in AD Administration. Review the AD Administration log file, located in $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/log (for 11.0), where <dbname> is the name of the database against which AD Administration is running. NT users will find this file in %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\log. In

Release 10.7 installations, the file is located in the log subdirectory under the install directory in your APPL_TOP. There should be no ORACLE errors.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Applications Message Reference Manual*

Step 3: Verify operating system login (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator/System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

You need one main operating system login (typically applmgr) to run AutoUpgrade and to manage Oracle Applications product files. Because you are upgrading, the Applications login has already been created. Be sure that you can log in to all the machines in the environments that will be affected by the upgrade process.

> **Additional Information:** *Installing Oracle Applications*

Step 4: Rename custom database objects with Applications prefixes (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Developer's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

AutoUpgrade automatically runs a script called addrpbco.sql, which drops database objects that match standard Oracle prefixes. For example, if you have a custom stored procedure named GL_CUSTOM in the schema for Oracle General Ledger, it is dropped during the upgrade. An object named XXGL_CUSTOM would not be affected. To preserve these custom database objects, relocate them to another schema or rename them so that they do not use the Oracle standard prefixes.

> **Warning:**   **Database object names should contain at least four characters for the product short name, followed by an underscore. Use only letters, digits, and underscores when naming database objects. For example, you could define your custom application to use the short name CUST, and database objects to use CUST_.**

> **Additional Information:**   Naming Standards, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Release 10.7* or *Release 11.0*

Step 5: Migrate or upgrade to Oracle8i Enterprise Edition (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle8i Interoperability Patch readme file, Oracle8i Reference Guide, Maintaining Oracle Applications**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Releases 10.7 and 11.0 of Oracle Applications are both certified to run with Oracle8*i* Enterprise Edition Release 8.1.6. *To reduce system downtime during the upgrade, we strongly recommend that you migrate or upgrade to Oracle8i 8.1.6 database now, if you have not done so already.* Perform the following steps:

1. Migrate or upgrade your database to Oracle8*i* Enterprise Edition Release 8.1.6.

    The *Oracle8i Migration* documentation contains instructions for migrating or upgrading your database.

2. Apply the Oracle8*i* Enterprise Edition Release 8.1.6 interoperability patches.

    An integral part of your migration or upgrade is the application of the Oracle8*i* Enterprise Edition Release 8.1.6 interoperability patches. Applying the patches allows your 11.0 or 10.7 applications to run under the 8.1.6 version of the Oracle database. The patch readme files contain complete instructions and describes other tasks necessary to complete the migration or upgrade. The patches are available on Oracle*MetaLink*.

    Additional Information: *Oracle8i Migration; Oracle8i Utilities*

3.   Set init.ora file parameters

    In your init.ora file, set the following parameters to the values indicated. Restart your database for the new parameters to take effect.

    ```
    _complex_view_merging          =           true
    _fast_full_scan_enabled        =           false
    _like_with_bind_as_equality    =           true
    _optimizer_mode_force          =           true
    _optimizer_undo_changes        =           false
    _or_expand_nvl_predicate       =           true
    _ordered_nested_loop           =           true
    _push_join_predicate           =           true
    _push_join_union_view          =           true
    _sort_elimination_cost_ratio   =           5
    _table_scan_cost_plus_one      =           true
    ```

```
_trace_files_public              =              true
_use_column_stats_for_function   =              true
_sqlexec_progression_cost        =          0
aq_tm_processes                  =          1
always_anti_join                 =              NESTED_LOOPS
always_semi_join                 =              NESTED_LOOPS
compatible                       =          8.1.6
db_block_buffers                 =          5000
db_files                         =          500
db_file_multiblock_read_count    =          8
dml_locks                        =          500
enqueue_resources                =          5000
log_buffer                       =          1048576
log_checkpoint_interval          =          100000
log_checkpoint_timeout           =          72000
max_enabled_roles                =          40
nls_date_format                  =          DD-MON-RR
nls_language                     =          american
nls_numeric_characters           =          .,
nls_sort                         =          binary
nls_territory                    =          america
open_cursors                     =          300
optimizer_features_enable        =          8.1.6
optimizer_max_permutations       =          79000
optimizer_mode                   =          rule
optimizer_percent_parallel       =          0
parallel_min_servers             =          0
processes                        =          75
query_rewrite_enabled            =          true
row_locking                      =          always
shared_pool_reserved_size        =          30000000
shared_pool_size                 =          300000000
sort_area_size                   =          256000
timed_statistics                 =          true
```

Note: You no longer need to set event = "10932 trace name context level 2". However, it is possible that custom code could generate a compilation error — the event reverses stricter type checking. You should fix your code, rather than rely on this event.

Additional Information: *Oracle 8i Reference Guide; Maintaining Oracle Applications*

4. Gather database statistics for CBO

The Oracle optimizer, using cost-based optimization (CBO), dynamically determines the most efficient access paths and join methods for SQL query execution by taking into account certain database statistics, such as the size of each table and the selectivity of each query condition. You need to gather these statistics and keep them current so that the Oracle optimizer can use them to optimize your database queries.

> **Additional Information:** Cost-based Optimization (CBO), Chapter 1

Use the FND_STATS package, available as patch 1268797 (for *pre-upgrade* use), to gather these statistics. Download the patch from Oracle*MetaLink* and apply it using AutoPatch. Then, generate CBO statistics by running the following script:

For 10.7 UNIX users:

```
$ cd $FND_TOP/patchsc/107/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afstatrn.sql FALSE
```

For 10.7 NT users:

```
C:\> cd %FND_TOP%\patchsc\107\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afstatrn.sql FALSE
```

For 11.0 UNIX users:

```
$ cd $FND_TOP/patch/110/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afstatrn.sql FALSE
```

For 11.0 NT users:

```
C:\> cd %FND_TOP%\patch\110\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afstatrn.sql FALSE
```

5. Identify/create PL/SQL log and out directories

Choose a temporary directory on your database server for log and output files from PL/SQL concurrent programs. If this directory does not exist, create it. Once you have chosen or created the directory, enter it as the value for utl_file_dir in init.ora for your database. Then, when prompted by AutoUpgrade or AD Administration (during the creation of the Applications environment file),

indicate the directory where you want the temporary log/output files to be located (this location is the value of the APPLPTMP variable).

> **Note:** This variable name is APPLPTMP, which is similar to, but not the same as, APPLTMP.

Step 6: Back up Oracle Applications and customizations (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Backup and Recovery Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Back up existing Oracle Applications product files, product customizations, customized help files (in HTML), and the Oracle Applications database before you begin to unload the Oracle Applications software.

Applications Technology Products

Because they affect all Oracle applications, you must perform the upgrade steps for System Administration and Application Object Library before you perform product-specific steps.

System Administration Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	1.	Verify ORACLE schemas (required)	System Administrator
❏	2.	Rename custom value sets (required)	System Administrator
❏	3.	Determine attachment file upload directory (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	4.	Review current user responsibilities (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	5.	Document concurrent program customizations (recommended)	System Administrator
❏	6.	Preserve menu customizations (recommended)	System Administrator
❏	7.	Preserve CUSTOM library customizations (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Verify ORACLE schemas (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

Verify that all ORACLE passwords are correct, and disable any ORACLE IDs that are no longer used. Use the ORACLE Users window (Register Oracle IDs window in Release 10.7) to change or disable ORACLE passwords (Security > ORACLE > Register). If there are any user-defined constraints on the objects within an ORACLE ID you wish to make obsolete, disable them before you perform this step.

> **Additional Information:** Register ORACLE IDs, Oracle Applications Security in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 2: Rename custom value sets (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

Oracle Applications includes many predefined value sets, primarily for Standard Report Submission parameters. AutoUpgrade may overwrite custom value sets if they use the same names as the predefined value sets. To avoid conflicts, as the System Administrator, navigate to the Value Sets window and rename value sets (Application > Validation > Set).

Certain standard naming patterns are reserved for use by the Oracle Applications products — 2- or 3-prefix characters immediately followed by an underscore or hyphen. For example: XX_VALUE_SET, XXX_Value Set, XX-VALUE_SET, XXX-Value Set.

Do *not* use these naming patterns for your custom value sets (to avoid potential upgrade conflicts). For example, you might want the name of your value sets to begin with a 6-character name for your site.

Note that Oracle Applications products have not always followed these guidelines in the past. So, in addition to verifying that your value sets do not use Oracle

Applications naming conventions, check the following lists and rename any conflicting value sets before you upgrade.

Table 2–1   Non-standard Oracle Applications Value Set Name Prefixes

CONC-	$FLEX$.
Jxxx_ (where xxx is any three letters, such as JEXX_)	OE:
SA -	

Table 2–2   Non-standard Oracle Applications Value Set Names

15 Characters	CS None, Required	Operating Unit
20 Characters	Categories	Operating Unit (secured)
30 Characters	Concurrent Program Name	P_SORT_COLUMN_4
30 Characters Optional	DD-MON-YY HH:MI	PartNumber
4 Characters	Date	PhysicalTags
50 chars	Default Test for SRS	ProductFamily
7/Number	ENTITY_PERIOD_NAME	Profile_test
APPL_RXR	FILEPATH	Regression suites
ARXSTR_GL_DATE	FLEXBUILDER_PARAMETERS	Regression_tests
ARXSTR_GL_DATE_HIGH	FLEXCODE_RXR	REPORT_OPTION
ARXSTR_GL_DATE_LOW	FLEXSTRUCT_RXR	Request Set Name
ARXSTR_SHOW_ADJS_CMS	FNDCPCRS_MODE	Responsibility ID
ARXSTR_TRX_DATE	FNDMDGEN_MODE	Responsibility Name
ARXSTR_TRX_DATE_HIGH	FNDSCSRC(Sort By)	Responsibility Name 4.0
ARXSTR_TRX_DATE_LOW	FORMAT_TYPE	SalesOrder
ARXVATRN_APPLICATION_DATE	Filename	Sequence_num
AUDIT_DATES	Foo	SRS Test Value Set
AUDIT_END_DATE	funds_action_flag	Sort by for FNDSCSRL
AUDIT_START_DATE	Form_Title_to_Name	Table_name
AUDIT_TABLE_NAME	Generic	Terminal Groups
AUDIT_USER_NAME	HINA_MONTH	Terminal Names
AZ Hierarchy	Help_Download_Format_Options	USER_PROFILE_OPTION
Address Line (30)	INVTRREG_SRS_SORT	VersionNumber

Table 2–2   Non-standard Oracle Applications Value Set Names

Application_Name	Inventory Organization	WIP Desc Val Set 2
Application_Name_to_Shortname	LEGAL_ENTITY	WIP Desc Val Set 1
CONC_REQUEST_IDS	MOVEMENT_TYPE	WIP Item Segment1
CS CONTACT	Menu_name	WIP Item Segment 2
CS None, Null allowed	MULTI_ORG_ID	

> **Additional Information:**   Define Value Set Flexfields, *Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual*

Step 3: Determine attachment file upload directory (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7NCA, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Application Object Library Reference Manual, Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

In Releases 10.7NCA and 11.0, the Oracle Applications Attachments feature supported attaching file-type documents to any application entity. The files were stored in a directory located on the application server and its location was stored in the Oracle Applications profile option Attachment File Directory. In Release 11*i*, file-type attachments are stored in the database, not the operating system. Before the upgrade, determine the location of any existing attachment files. After the upgrade, load any existing attachment files into the database.

To determine the location of existing attachment files:

1. As System Administrator, choose Profile > System.

2. In the Find System Profile Values window, type *Attachment File Directory* in the Profile field and press Find.

3. Write down the current setting of the profile option (a directory path). If the profile option is not set, there are no attachment files to be upgraded.

4. In the operating system on the application server, verify that there are files in the directory specified by the profile option setting.

Step 4: Review current user responsibilities (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 (character mode)**	Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Application System Administrator's Guide**	Requires concurrent manager: **Yes**

After you upgrade to Release 11i, you will not have access to any character-mode responsibilities. A menu report, a responsibility report, and a Users of a Responsibility report can help you determine which character-mode responsibilities are being used at your installation. Use these reports to identify any character-mode users who need to be upgraded to the appropriate Release 11*i* responsibilities.

> **Additional Information:** Managing Oracle Applications Security, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 5: Document concurrent program customizations (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual, Release 10.7 or 11**	Users must log off: **No**

If you have updated any concurrent program definitions provided by Oracle Applications or created customized definitions, the upgrade process overwrites your customizations. Document the information you entered in the Concurrent Programs window for each customized concurrent program by querying the appropriate row in the Concurrent Programs window and printing the screen.

The upgrade process may affect the updated concurrent program definitions, and you may need to alter the programs to the way you want them when the upgrade process is complete. After the upgrade, use the Concurrent Programs window to update concurrent programs using the information in your screen printout.

Do not update concurrent programs after you perform this step.

> **Additional Information:** Product Customization Standards, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Step 6: Preserve menu customizations (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 10SC, 10.7NCA, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Release 10SC**	Users must log off: **No**

Because the upgrade process may remove or overwrite existing, customized menus, or new menus that you have created, you should preserve them before you begin.

To document your menus, run the appropriate Function Security reports for the responsibilities of interest.

To preserve your customized menus, use the Function Security Loader (FNDSLOAD for UNIX, fndsload.exe for NT) executable to extract and restore individual menus or all menus attached to all responsibilities registered under a given application. This executable is under FND_TOP in the bin directory.

Use the Function Security Loader to extract the menu definitions from the database to a text file. For example, to download one menu, you would type the following.

```
FNDSLOAD <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y LOCAL myfile DOWNLOAD MYMENU
```

where myfile is the export filename and MYMENU is the name of the GUI menu to be extracted. To download menus for an entire application, type:

```
FNDSLOAD <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y LOCAL myfile DOWNLOAD MYAPP
```

where myfile is the export filename (extension .slt) and MYAPP is the shortname for the application containing the responsibilities for the menus being extracted.

> **Additional Information:**   Function Security Reports and Function Security Loader, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 7: Preserve CUSTOM library customizations (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Developer's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

The upgrade process overwrites CUSTOM library customizations, such as for a Release 10SC or a 10.7 NCA Zoom. Save a backup copy of your CUSTOM library and use it to replace the CUSTOM library created during the upgrade.

> **Additional Information:**   Zoom and the CUSTOM Library, *Oracle Applications User Interface Standards for Forms-based Products;* Using the CUSTOM Library, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide Release 11*

Application Object Library Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**1.**	Transition custom forms to Oracle Forms Developer 6i (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**2.**	Convert custom reports that use SQL*Report (RPT), FlexRpt, and FlexSQL (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❏	**3.**	Convert message dictionary functions (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❏	**4.**	Convert user profile APIs in C concurrent programs (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Transition custom forms to Oracle Forms Developer 6*i* (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0, 10SC (SmartClient)**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Oracle Applications User Interface Standards**	Users must log off: **No**

If you are upgrading from the Release 10.7 character-mode SQL*Forms 2.3, you need to rewrite your custom forms in Oracle Forms 6*i*. If you are upgrading from Release 10SC (SmartClient), Release 10.7, or Release 11.0, and your forms are already in Oracle Forms 4.5, you need to upgrade them now. For a complete description of upgrading custom forms, see the Customization Standards chapter of the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

> **Additional Information:**   *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Step 2: Convert custom reports that use SQL*Report (RPT), FlexRpt, and FlexSQL (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **Oracle Reports Reference Manual or Oracle Applications Developer's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

SQL*Report (RPT), the flexfield APIs FlexRpt, and FlexSQL are no longer supported. Rewrite custom reports that use these programs using a tool such as Oracle Reports Developer.

Step 3: Convert message dictionary functions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual, Release 10, Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Release 11**	Users must log off: **No**

Remove the following Message Dictionary functions from your custom code:

Function	Action
fddgcs/fddgme	There is no longer a cascading stack or a message explanation. These functions are obsolete.
fddtoken	Replace with afdtoken. Requires fddutl.h header file. The syntax is: `boolean afdtoken(/*_ text *token_name, text *token_value _*/);`
fddname	Replace with afdname. Takes two arguments (the fddname function takes only the message name). Requires fddutl.h header file. The syntax is: `boolean afdname(/*_ text *applsname, text *msg_name _*/);`
fddget	We strongly recommend that you convert to afdget. The new interface allows you to pass a buffer and buffer size. The old interface assumed the existence of a fixed-size global variable that is internal to the function. Requires fddutl.h header file. The syntax is: `boolean afdget(/*_ text *msg_buf, size_t buf_size _*/);`
fddmsg	Convert to afderror or afdshow. We strongly recommend using these functions explicitly so that you get the intended display behavior (because the new message system display is based on the function called, not on message properties). Requires fddutl.h header file. The syntax is: `boolean afderror(/*_ void _*/);`

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual, Release 10*; *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Release 10.7* or *11*

Step 4: Convert user profile APIs in C concurrent programs (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual, Release 10, Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Release 11**	Users must log off: **No**

Remove the following functions from your C concurrent programs:

Function	Action

fdpgov	Convert to afpoget. This function gets the current value of a profile option. It returns TRUE if successful, FALSE if it cannot find the profile option value. It also returns FALSE when it retrieves a profile that exists but has no value. You must include the file fdpopt.h in your C code file (#include<fdpopt.h>) to use this C function. The syntax is:
	`boolean afpoget(/*_ text *option_name,`
	`                text *option_value _*/);`
	where <option_name> is the name of the profile option, and <option_value> is the profile option value returned by the function.

Function	Action
fdppov	Convert to afpoput. Changes the value of a profile option within the scope of the current process. It returns TRUE if successful. It returns FALSE if it tries to change the value of a profile option for which the WRITE flag is set to No, or if it tries to create a profile option for which the ENABLE_CREATE flag is not set. You must include the file fdpopt.h in your C code file (#include <fdpopt.h>) to use this C function. The syntax is:

```
boolean afpoput(/*_ text *option_name,
                    text *option_value _*/);
```

where <option_name> is the name of the profile option, and <option_value> is the value you wish to change the profile option to for the current session. All values are stored as text and may be more than 240 characters.

> **Additional Information:** User Profiles, *Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual, Release 10*; User Profiles, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Release 10.7* or *11*

Oracle Alert Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	**1.** Run the Purge Alert and Action Set Checks alert (recommended)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Run the Purge Alert and Action Set Checks alert (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

This periodic alert finds old Alert data in your Oracle Alert tables and purges it. For best upgrade performance, consider keeping the ALR_ACTION_HISTORY table small (20,000 rows or less). To run the Purge alert, as the Alert Manager:

1. Navigate to the Alerts window (Alerts > Define) and choose Query > Enter.

2. Type Purge% in the Name field and choose Query > Run.

3. Click Enabled and save the screen.

4. Choose Request > Check and run the Purge alert.

Financials Product Family

The following Category 1 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Financials product family.

Oracle Cash Management Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❑	**1.** Back up customized Reconciliation Open Interface objects (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Back up customized Reconciliation Open Interface objects (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **Reconciliation Open Interface (Oracle Cash Management User's Guide)**	Users must log off: **No**

This step is required only if you have implemented the Reconciliation Open Interface, which you would have customized to work in your environment. The objects are: CE_999_INTERFACE_V (view) and CE_999_PKG (package).

> **WARNING:** AutoUpgrade recreates these objects and overwrites any customizations that you have made. If you customized any of these objects, be sure to save your customized copies or write a script to recreate them. You will reinstall them after the upgrade.

Oracle Payables Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❑	**1.** Complete outstanding payment batches (required)	Application Specialist (Payables)

Step 1: Complete outstanding payment batches (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**
Reference manual: **Cancel Payment Batch and Confirm Payment Batch (Payables Reference Manual, Release 10.7); (Payables User's Guide, Release 10.7 or 11)**	Users must log off: **No**

In character-mode, navigate to the Cancel Payment Batch form (\Navigate Controls Payment ResetPaymentBatch) to see if there are any outstanding payment batches and to confirm or cancel a payment batch.

In GUI, as the Payables Manager, choose Payments > Entry > Payment Batches. Query for in-process payment batches. Complete or cancel batches by choosing the Actions button and using the Actions window.

Oracle Projects Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❑	1.	Apply prerequisite patch (required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
❑	2.	Complete transfer and tieback of cost, revenue, and invoices (required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
❑	3.	Clear the Transaction Interface table (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Projects)
❑	4.	Transfer asset lines and post mass additions (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
❑	5.	Upgrade to the new summarization model (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Projects)

Step 1: Apply prerequisite patch (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**	

If you are upgrading from Release 10.7, apply patch 1242989 (requires Oracle Projects Patchset 16.1.PA.E) to fix erroneous revenue amounts generated by expenditure and/or summarization items. After you apply this patch, you may have invalid objects. To see a list, type the following at the system prompt:

```
select object_name, object_type from all_objects where status = 'INVALID';
```

Run Compile APPS schema(s) from the adadmin. When the process is complete, check for invalid objects again. If you see PA_BUDGET_UPGRADE_PKG, you can safely ignore it. However, all other invalid objects should be investigated.

> **Note:** Try compiling APPS schema(s) again. Sometimes the packages are nested, and compiling them again fixes the problem.

If you are upgrading from Release 11.0, apply patch 884333 (requires Oracle Applications 11.0.2 patch). Download patches from Oracle*MetaLink*.

Step 2: Complete transfer and tieback of cost, revenue, and invoices (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**	

If you are upgrading from 10.7 character-mode, do not perform this step.

Complete the transfer and tieback processes for all cost and revenue transactions and invoices as part of your normal processing cycle to process most of the data. The transfer and tieback processes are:

PRC: Tieback Expense Reports from Payables	PRC: Tieback Invoices from Receivables
PRC: Tieback Labor Costs from General Ledger	PRC: Tieback Revenues from General Ledger
PRC: Tieback Total Burdened Cost from GL	PRC: Tieback Usage Costs from GL

To run a process, choose Other > Requests > Run. In the Submit Request window, enter the name of the process and submit your request. You must run each process again just before you begin the upgrade to ensure that all data in the interface tables is processed before the upgrade begins.

Step 3: Clear the Transaction Interface table (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 or 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**	

Perform only if you have any pending transactions in the transaction interface table (PA_TRANSACTION_INTERFACE_ALL).

You must import all pending transactions from the transaction interface table into Oracle Projects. To do this, choose Requests > Run. In the Submit Request window, enter PRC: Transaction Import and submit the request.

The Transaction Import process prompts you for a Transaction Source. To be certain that the table is cleared, run the Transaction Import process for each Transaction

Source. If the process rejects any records, you must fix them and run the Transaction Import process again, or delete the records from the table.

Run this process again just before you begin the upgrade to ensure that all data in the interface tables is processed before the upgrade begins.

Step 4: Transfer asset lines and post mass additions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**	

Perform only if you use the capital projects feature in Oracle Projects.

Complete the transfer of asset lines to Oracle Assets as part of your normal processing cycle to process most the data.

- To transfer asset lines, choose Requests > Run. In the Submit Request window, enter PRC: Interface Assets and submit the request.

- To create assets in Oracle Assets from the assets lines you transferred, run the Post Mass Additions program in Oracle Assets. From the Fixed Assets Manager responsibility, choose Mass Additions > Post Mass Additions.

Run these processes again just before you begin the upgrade to ensures that all data in the interface tables is processed before the upgrade begins.

Step 5: Upgrade to the new summarization model (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**	

Perform this step only if you are using the accumulation model used before Release 10.7. Release 11*i* does not support this model. To upgrade to the new summarization model, choose Requests > Run. In the Submit Request window, enter PRC: Update Project Summary Amounts and submit the request. Run this process for all projects.

Oracle Receivables Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	1.	Rename customized tax structure (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	2.	Create tax vendor extension view scripts (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
❏	3.	Verify realized gains, realized losses, and rounding accounts (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Receivables)
❏	4.	Migrate customers as persons (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Rename customized tax structure (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

Complete this step only if you have created a customized Sales Tax Location Flexfield structure. AutoUpgrade creates the following default Sales Tax Location Flexfield structures: Province, Province.City, City, State.City, State.County.City, No Validation - Country. If you used any of these names for your customized flexfield structure, rename the customized structure so that upgrading does not overwrite it.

> **Note:**   You can omit this step in subsequent upgrades if you name your customized Sales Tax Location Flexfield structure something other than one of the six default structures.

Step 2: Create tax vendor extension view scripts (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Receivables Tax Manual**	Users must log off: **No**

Perform if you implemented the Tax Vendor Extension and customized the Tax Vendor Extension views.

AutoUpgrade recreates these views and overwrites customizations that you have made. If you have customized any of the views, save your customized copies or write a script to recreate each one. You will reinstall these views after the upgrade.

> **Attention:** Taxware (previously known as AVP) and Vertex software is included in Oracle Receivables Release 11 and 11*i*. If you previously integrated Oracle Receivables Release 10 with Taxware or Vertex using software supplied by the Oracle Design and Migration Services (DMS), you must consider additional upgrade issues. For example, if you customized views, you must reapply the changes after upgrading. See *Implementing Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum Release 11i* or *Implementing Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use System Release 11i.*

> **Additional Information:** Implementing the Tax Vendor Extension, *Oracle Receivables Tax Manual, Release 10.7* or *11; Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*

You can complete this step before you run AutoUpgrade. However, if you subsequently customize any of these views, be sure to recreate your view script(s). The following views are *not* available in Oracle Receivables Release 11 or 11*i*:

View	Used by
TAX_LINES_INQUIRY_V	Sales Orders window in Oracle Order Management.
TAX_LINES_RECREATE_V	Sales Orders window in Oracle Order Management.
TAX_VENDOR_JURISDICTIONS_V	Sales Orders window in Oracle Order Management.
TAX_LINES_ENGINE_REVERSE_V	Recurring Invoice program (Copy Transactions window).

Step 3: Verify realized gains, realized losses, and rounding accounts (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

For each organization that you have set up and defined a Realized Gains, Realized Losses, or Cross Currency Rounding account, verify that each account is enabled and currently valid as of the date on which you perform the upgrade.

Step 4: Migrate customers as *persons* (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

Customer records migrated to Oracle Receivables are brought in, by default, as organizations (companies). If you want to migrate a particular customer (or set of customers) as *persons* and not as organizations, set the CUSTOMER_CATEGORY_ CODE in the RA_CUSTOMERS table to CONSUMER for each such customer.

Country-specific Financials Product Family

The following Category 1 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Country-specific Financials product family.

Oracle Financials for the Americas Tasks

Checklist			Perform for this country...
❏	1.	Record the value of the JL: Inflation Ratio Precision profile option (required)	Argentina, Chile
❏	2.	Import outstanding bank collection documents (required)	Brazil
❏	3.	Restore all archived technical appraisals and adjustments (recommended)	Columbia

Step 1: Record the value of the JL: Inflation Ratio Precision profile option (required)

Perform for this country: **Argentina, Chile**	Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**
Performed by: **System Administrator**	Users must log off: **No**
Reference manual: **Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**

With Oracle General Ledger for Argentina and Chile, you can define the number of decimal positions to make the inflation rate calculation more precise. Because the internal name of the JL: Inflation Ratio Precision profile option has changed, record the value so that you can use it later to define the profile option.

> **Additional Information:**   Define Inflation Ratio Precision, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

Step 2: Import outstanding bank collection documents (required)

Perform for this country: **Brazil**	Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**
Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**	Users must log off: **No**
Reference manual: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

Import all bank collection documents from the Bank Collection Documents interface tables. From the Brazilian Payables responsibility, run the Import Bank Collection Documents program from the Standard Request Submission windows (Other > Requests > Run). Use the Imported Collection Documents window (Collection Documents > Imported > Collection Docs) to review and fix all rejected bank collection documents.

> **Additional Information:**   Entering and Associating Collection Documents, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 3: Restore all archived technical appraisals and adjustments (recommended)

Perform for this country: **Colombia**	Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**
Performed by: **Application Specialist**	Users must log off: **No**
Reference manual: **Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

With Oracle Assets for Colombia, you can run a technical appraisal against multiple depreciation books. For this new functionality, changes were made to the database and the archiving and purging processes. This step ensures that the data created in Release 11 is upgraded to meet Release 11*i* standards.

> **Note:**   If you omit this step, the technical appraisal data archived in Release 11 will not be upgraded to the Release 11*i* format. As a result, you cannot restore the archived data after the upgrade. Also, you could unknowingly revalue a technical appraisal against a book that the appraisal was already revalued for in Release 11.

> **Additional Information:**   Archiving, Purging, and Restoring Technical Appraisals, *Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*

HRMS Product Family

The following Category 1 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the HRMS product family.

Oracle Human Resources Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	1.	Update custom code after removing obsolete synonyms (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	2.	Update custom reports after dropping HRV and OTV views (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	3.	Check location of customized script for Salary Proposal view (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
❏	4.	Update custom code referring to positions (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	5.	Update user-defined FastFormula definitions (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Update custom code after removing obsolete synonyms (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: **No**

The following synonyms existed in Release 10.7 for compatibility following the renaming of tables between Release 9 and 10.7. The upgrade drops these synonyms. If you have any custom code that references the Release 9 table names, you must replace the names with the Release 10.7 names before you perform the upgrade.

Release 9	Release 10
PER_LETTER_GENERATION_STATUSES	PER_LETTER_GEN_STATUSES
PER_ABSENCE_ATTENDANCE_REASONS	PER_ABS_ATTENDANCE_REASONS
PER_CONTACTS	PER_CONTACT_RELATIONSHIPS
PER_CLASSIFICATIONS	PER_SPECIAL_INFO_TYPES

Step 2: Update custom reports after dropping HRV and OTV views (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **Release 10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

The upgrade drops all views that begin HRV_ and OTV_. If you have any custom reports that refer to these views, amend them to reflect the new HRMS Intelligence views before you perform the upgrade.

Step 3: Check location of customized script for Salary Proposal view (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **Release 10.7**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

The Salary Proposals view (formerly named PER_SALARY_PROPOSALS_HRV) is renamed to HRU_SALARY_PROPOSALS to make its name consistent with other views that can be customized. If you have customized this script, you need to reapply your changes. The peupl01v.sql script creates the view. It is found in $PER_TOP/admin/sql for UNIX and %PER_TOP%\admin\sql for NT. Check the absolute location of your customized script before the upgrade since PER_TOP points to the new code tree after upgrade.

Step 4: Update custom code referring to positions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **Release 10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

Before Release 11*i,* position information was stored in the PER_ALL_POSITIONS table. There were two views: PER_POSITIONS and PER_POSITIONS_V1. In Release 11*i,* position information has been datetracked and information stored in the HR_ALL_POSITIONS_F table. New views, HR_POSITIONS_V and other standard datetracked views, now support datetracked positions. If you have created custom code that references the old position tables or views, you must update it to reference the new datetracked ones.

Step 5: Update user-defined FastFormula definitions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **Release 10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Release 11*i* provides additional support for alternative user formats for dates and numbers. This means that dates and decimal numbers held in VARCHAR columns are in canonical format. Dates are held in YYYY/MM/DD HH24:MI:SS format, instead of DD-MON-YYYY as in previous releases. Decimal numbers are held using the decimal place character ("."), even for countries where a different character is standard (for example, France uses a comma).

With Oracle FastFormula, define database items or functions for use in any formula. If you have defined your own database items in an earlier release, you must change the item definitions and PL/SQL route definitions to reflect these changes.

To change database item definitions:
On any VARCHAR columns used to store numbers or dates, change ff_database_items.definition_text as follows: use fnd_number.canonical_to_number (instead of to_number) and fnd_date.canonical_to-date (instead of to_date). For example, a database item with definition text "to_number (EEV.screen_entry_value)" should be changed to "fnd_number.canonical_to_number (EEV.screen_entry_value)".

To change a route definition:
You must remove to_date (and DD-MON-YYYY) from any date context in ff_routes.text. For example, a route with text containing "and to_date(\&B1, 'DD-MON-YYYY') between EE.effective_start_date and EE.effective_end_date" should be changed to read "and \&B1 between EE.effective_start_date and EE.effective_end_date".

Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	**1.** Update custom code for U.S. tax information (W4) changes (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Update custom code for U.S. tax information (W4) changes (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

Before Release 11, tax information was stored in the descriptive flexfields in PER_ASSIGNMENT_EXTRA_INFO. There were three views:

PAY_EMP_FED_TAX_V1	PAY_EMP_STATE_TAX_V1
PAY_EMP_LOCAL_TAX_V1	

In Release 11*i*, the W4 information has been datetracked. There are four new tables:

PAY_US_EMP_FED_TAX_RULES_F	PAY_US_EMP_STATE_TAX_RULES_F
PAY_US_EMP_COUNTY_TAX_RULES_F	PAY_US_EMP_CITY_TAX_RULES_F

The following new views have been created to support datetracked W4:

PAY_US_EMP_FED_TAX_RULES_V	PAY_US_EMP_STATE_TAX_RULES_V
PAY_US_EMP_COUNTY_TAX_RULES_V	PAY_US_EMP_CITY_TAX_RULES_V
PAY_US_EMP_TIME_IN_STATE_V	PAY_US_EMP_TIME_IN_COUNTY_V
PAY_US_EMP_TIME_IN_CITY_V	

If you have built custom code that references these old tables or views, you must update it to reference the new datetracked ones.

Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family

The following Category 1 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Manufacturing and Distribution product family. Because they are closely related, the tasks for Oracle Inventory, Oracle Cost Management, and Oracle Work in Process are listed under a single heading.

Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks

Checklist			Menu Responsibility>function
❑	1.	Close discrete jobs - WIP (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > WIP
❑	2.	Purge discrete and repetitive data - WIP (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > WIP

Step 1: Close discrete jobs - WIP (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (WIP)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 10.7 and Release 11**	Users must log off: **No**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**	

To make the upgrade process run faster, close all discrete jobs that you are no longer transacting and that you are prepared to close. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the WIP function. Then navigate to Discrete Jobs > Close discrete jobs > Close discrete jobs.

> **Additional Information:**   Discrete Job Close, *Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual, Release 10.7; Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 2: Purge discrete and repetitive data - WIP (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (WIP)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Work in Process User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**	

The upgrade runs faster if you purge all unneeded discrete jobs and repetitive schedules. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the WIP function. To purge discrete data, navigate to Discrete Jobs > Purge Discrete jobs > Purge Discrete jobs. To purge repetitive data, navigate to Repetitive > Purge Repetitive Schedules > Purge Repetitive Schedules.

> **Additional Information:**   Discrete Job Purge and Repetitive Schedule Purge, *Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual, Release 10.7; Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 11*

Oracle Release Management/Automotive Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
❑ 1. Verify product installations (recommended)	Database Administrator / Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)

Step 1: Verify product installations (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator ⁄ Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

Before you upgrade Release Management⁄Automotive, you must have the following products installed: Oracle Common Modules (AK), Global Accounting Engine (AX), Oracle Accounts Receivable (AR), Oracle Inventory (INV), Oracle Bills of Material (BOM), and Oracle Master Scheduling⁄Supply Chain Planning (MRP).

Public Sector Product Family

The following Category 1 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Public Sector product family.

Oracle Labor Distribution Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❑	**1.** Ensure that transactions are summarized and transferred (required)	Application Specialist

Step 1: Ensure that transactions are summarized and transferred (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist**
Reference manual: **Oracle Labor Distribution User's Guide**	User must log off this application: **No**
Requires concurrent manager: **Yes**	

Ensure that all transactions are successfully summarized and transferred before upgrading Oracle Labor Distribution. For information on how to summarize and transfer transactions, see Chapter 12, Summarize Distribution Lines and Transfer Procedures, *Oracle Labor Distribution User's Guide*.

3

Category 2 — After You Receive the Software

This chapter describes the upgrade preparation steps (also known as pre-upgrade steps) that you should run after you receive your new Oracle Applications software. We refer to these steps as Category 2 — you must unload the new files, but you can continue to use your products at the existing release level after you run these steps.

> **Attention:** Unless otherwise noted, Category 2 steps that use a form should be performed from your existing ("old") APPL_TOP. Steps that require running a SQL*Plus script should be performed from your "new" APPL_TOP.

In this chapter, you will perform Category 2 steps for the following products:

Running Rapid Install

Rapid Install greatly simplifies your upgrade process by performing many of the required tasks for you. It sets up your technology stack and creates all the necessary file systems for your middle tier components, and, if your database server is on a platform that supports Oracle Applications on a middle tier, it creates the new file system for your database server as well. It also performs all associated tasks such as relinking executables, and generating forms, reports, and message files.

Select the Upgrade Existing Applications instance option from the initial Rapid Install screen. Then, step through the screens and prompts that follow to create a configuration file and the directories for your upgraded installation. *Installing Oracle Applications* contains detailed instructions on using Rapid Install for an upgrade.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Applications Concepts*

Setting Environment Variables

After the Rapid Install process is complete, you need to set your environment variables. Log in as the default Applications user and follow the instructions in this section.

When you run Rapid Install, it creates your new APPL_TOP and sets certain environment variables in the adovars.env file in your $APPL_TOP/admin directory (for UNIX). For NT users, Rapid Install sets environment variables in the registry and in the adovars.cmd file in your %APPL_TOP%\admin directory

If you have customizations, your database administrator or system administrator may need to edit the adovars.env (for UNIX) or the adovars.cmd (for NT) file for all servers (except the database server) to define the JAVA_TOP, OA_JRE_TOP, CLASSPATH, OAH_TOP, and OAD_TOP variables and add any customized settings to Applications variables, including custom application basepath variables.

> **Note:** Settings in adovars.env or in adovars.cmd affect all Applications product groups using this APPL_TOP. If you wish to define any database-specific customizations, you need to add logic to ensure it only executes for the relevant product group. UNIX users can also add the logic to the end of the main environment file, after the call to adovars.env. However they must re-apply this logic any time the main environment file is regenerated.

Rapid Install creates the APPSORA.env (UNIX) or APPSORA.cmd (NT) file, which sets up both the Applications and Oracle8*i* technology stack environment. This file is located in your APPL_TOP. To export the environment variables that are necessary, run this file from your new APPL_TOP as follows:

For UNIX Bourne shell users:
```
$. APPSORA.env
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> APPSORA.cmd
```

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Applications Concepts; Maintaining Oracle Applications*

Database Upgrade Steps

Because they affect all Oracle applications, you must perform the steps for the Database Upgrade before you perform Application Technology or product-specific steps.

Database Upgrade Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	1.	Validate APPS schema(s) (recommended)	Database Administrator
❏	2.	Set up tablespaces (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
❏	3.	Drop custom schemas that match APPS% (required)	Database Administrator
❏	4.	Verify custom index privileges (required)	Database Administrator
❏	5.	Drop conflicting custom public synonyms (required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Validate APPS schema(s) (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator /System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Maintaining Oracle Applications**	Users must log off: **No**

To validate the integrity of your APPS schema(s) and identify existing invalid objects in your database you can run a script, which identifies potential problems and creates a baseline list of invalid objects. The script lists the objects in a log file called <APPS schema name>.lst, found in the /admin/<dbname>/out directory of

your APPL_TOP. Review this file to see if any corrective action is needed and to compare the list of objects you get when you verify APPS schema(s) after the upgrade.

If you are upgrading from Release 10.7:
To run the script from the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @advrf107.sql <APPS username> \
  <AOL username>
```

To run the script from the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @advrf107.sql <APPS username> \
    <AOL username>
```

If you are upgrading from Release 11.0:
Run the script by choosing Validate APPS Schema(s) from the Maintain Database Objects menu in AD Administration from your old APPL_TOP.

> **Additional Information:**   AD Administration, *Maintaining Oracle Applications*

Step 2: Set up tablespaces (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

If you have upgraded your database to Oracle8*i* Enterprise Edition Release 8.1.6.1, you can set up your tablespaces for Release 11*i* of Oracle Applications. You will need to perform the following steps to complete the process.

> **Note:**   Do not convert tablespaces until you have upgraded to Release 8.1.6.1 of Oracle8*i* Enterprise Edition.

1. Convert tablespaces to local extent management

    Oracle Applications recommends the use of local extent management to increase performance. To convert all non-SYSTEM tablespaces from Data Dictionary extent management to local extent management, run the following script:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @adtbscnv.pls \
  <SYSTEM password>
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @adtbscnv.pls \
    <SYSTEM password>
```

This script displays messages describing problems it would not fix and suggesting manual fixes. You should review the output of this script (adtbscnv.lst), fix the indicated problems, and continue to re-run the script until it runs cleanly. You must fix all issues related to temporary tablespaces.

> **Additional Information:**   Managing Tablespaces, *Oracle8i Administrator's Guide*

2.   Create tablespace for new products and resize existing product tablespace

There are new products in this release that did not exist in previous releases. We have provided a script that will create tablespaces for these new products and resize the tablespace for your existing products. To use this script, first run adgntbsp.sql from the patch/115/sql directory of product AD against your database using SQL*Plus as the APPS user. This process gathers information about your current products and tablespaces and then uses it to create the tablespace creation script (adcrtbsp.sql) in the current directory. You run adcrtbsp.sql to resize your existing tablespaces and create new ones.

Before you run adcrtbsp.sql, review and customize the location of the data files listed in this script to suit your installation. Run adcrtbsp.sql from the Oracle8i Database server as the SYSTEM user.

Step 3: Drop custom schemas that match APPS% (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

AutoUpgrade automatically creates a schema named APPS, and may create additional schemas with names using APPS as a prefix. If you have created custom

schemas that match APPS%, you must export or migrate these schemas and drop them so that there are no conflicts during the upgrade.

> **Additional Information:** Export and Import, *Oracle8i Utilities*

Use the following SQL statement to find any schemas whose name matches APPS%:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afcuschm.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afcuschm.sql
```

> **Attention:** Do not drop any APPS schema installed by AutoUpgrade.

The afcuschm.sql script creates two files: afdrpusr.lst and afdrpusr.sql. The afdrpusr.lst file lists custom schema names. If any are listed, export them before dropping them.

> **Note:** Review afdrpusr.lst carefully to be sure only applicable custom schemas appear. Also be sure that all users that will be dropped are backed up prior to running the command.

Use afdrpusr.sql to drop conflicting schemas:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afdrpusr.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afdrpusr.sql
```

Disable the ORACLE ID for each conflicting schema. As the System Administrator, navigate to the Register Oracle IDs window (Security > ORACLE > Register) and

disable the privileges for each schema. Then, ensure that no data groups use this ORACLE ID. Navigate to Define Data Group (Security > ORACLE > DataGroup).

> **Additional Information:** Register ORACLE IDs, Define Data Group, *Oracle Applications System Administration Reference Manual, Release 10* or *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Release 11*

If you import your schemas under a new name, follow the instructions in this manual for integrating custom schemas.

> **Additional Information:** Impact on Custom Schemas, *Oracle Applications Concepts*

Step 4: Verify custom index privileges (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

If a schema owns a custom index on an Oracle Applications table, ensure that the schema has privileges to drop the custom indexes. The ODF Comparison utility may try to drop custom indexes when it maintains Oracle Applications tables. Use the following command to identify schemas that may cause problems:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afindxpr.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afindxpr.sql
```

The afindxpr.sql script creates two files: afpregdi.lst and afpregdi.sql. The afpregdi.lst file lists the custom indexes that have a different owner and the table owner. If the file is empty, no further action is required. Use afpregdi.sql to grant DROP ANY INDEX privileges for any TABLE_OWNERs listed:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afpregdi.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afpregdi.sql
```

Step 5: Drop conflicting custom public synonyms (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

You must ensure that there are no public synonyms with the same name as an Oracle Applications schema. Also, there should be no public synonyms that conflict with default usernames for new products (such as, AK, AX, AZ. CE, and so on). If necessary, you can recreate these as private synonyms in a custom schema after the upgrade. To check for custom public synonyms that conflict, run this script:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afpubsyn.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afpubsyn.sql
```

The afpubsyn.sql script creates two files: afpubsyn.lst and afpredps.sql. Review afpubsyn.lst. If the file is empty, no further action is required. If there are conflicting synonyms, run the afpredps.sql script:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afpredps.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afpredps.sql
```

Applications Technology Products

Because they affect all Oracle applications, begin with the upgrade steps for System Administration and Application Object Library.

System Administration Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**1.**	Delete unsuccessful login data (recommended)	Technical Specialist

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**2.**	Restrict access to administration directory – all servers except database (recommended)	System Administrator
❏	**3.**	Purge old concurrent requests (recommended)	System Administrator

Step 1: Delete unsuccessful login data (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

FND_UNSUCCESSFUL_LOGINS records unsuccessful login attempts to Oracle Applications. If you no longer need this information, you can delete all the rows from this table to improve performance. From the new APPL_TOP, run this script:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AOL username>/<AOL password> @afdtrn01.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <AOL username>/<AOL password> @afdtrn01.sql
```

Step 2: Restrict access to administration directory – all servers except database (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

Some AutoUpgrade output, such as log and restart files, contains passwords to ORACLE accounts related to Oracle Applications, including the SYSTEM account. We recommend that you restrict access to the admin directory that contains these files. In general, users do not have direct access to *any* server machines used by Oracle Applications, so you need to protect the admin directories only in cases where users require access to the servers for other reasons.

Run this step from the new APPL_TOP. Repeat on all servers where you intend to run AutoUpgrade or AutoPatch.

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP
```

```
$ chmod 700 admin
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%
C:\> attrib +R admin
```

> **Suggestion:** Retain log and restart files online until you have implemented your products and tested them thoroughly. Oracle Support Services may need access to these files if you encounter problems implementing or using your system.

Step 3: Purge old concurrent requests (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**	

You may want to run the Purge Concurrent Requests and/or Managers report, which purges concurrent requests. Run the report from the old APPL_TOP in either AGE or COUNT mode to purge concurrent requests based on the number of days old or the number of old requests to be retained. Choose Requests > Run to access the Submit Request window.

> **Additional Information:** Purge Concurrent Request and/or Manager Data Program, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Release 10.7* or *11*

Oracle FlexBuilder/Account Generator Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	**1.** Indicate use of FlexBuilder process for Account Generator (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Indicate use of FlexBuilder process for Account Generator (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Workflow Guide, Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide**	Users should log off: **Yes**

You must perform this step if you want to use the Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process for a particular Workflow Account Generator item type. This process replicates your FlexBuilder customizations from Release 10.7.

AutoUpgrade scripts update your FlexBuilder rules. The Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process contains the logic from your custom FlexBuilder rules. It contains a function that retrieves the necessary item attribute values (corresponding to raw parameters in FlexBuilder) and calls PL/SQL functions to create the code combination. Run this script to see if there are any inconsistencies that will cause the upgrade to fail:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afffcfb.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afffcfb.sql
```

Review the output file (afffcfb.out) to see if there are any inconsistencies in your data. Follow the instructions in the file to fix the data. In this file, the following codes have these meanings:

BF: FlexBuilder	OFF: Key Flexfield
Form-F: FNDFBRFP form (FlexBuilder functions)	Form-P: FNDFBMPA form (FlexBuilder parameters)
Form-A: FNDFBMAS form (FlexBuilder assignments)	Form-K: FNDFFMIS form (FlexBuilder segments)

> **Warning:** If you continue with the upgrade without investigating and solving data inconsistencies, your upgrade may fail.

Financials Product Family

The following Category 2 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Financials product family.

Oracle General Ledger Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	**1.** Review daily rates (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (GL) / Database Administrator
❏	**2.** Revise custom programs that automatically load daily rates (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Review daily rates (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL) / Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

> **Attention:**   Perform this step if you maintain daily rates for more than one set of books with the same functional currency in the same Release 10.7 Applications installation.

In Release 11, Oracle General Ledger started to use a new data model for daily rates. Previously, a separate set of daily rates was maintained for each set of books. Now, a single set of daily rates is maintained for each applications instance. Therefore, if you have set up multiple sets of books in a single Release 11*i* Applications installation, you must use the same set of daily rates for all those sets of books.

> **Note:**   A daily rate set includes all the daily rates you've defined for specific combinations of foreign currency, rate type, and date.

What Actually Happens During an upgrade from Release 10.7?

When you upgrade to Release 11*i* from 10.7, AutoUpgrade runs a script that analyzes the daily rates maintained in each set of books within your Applications installation. For each date for which daily rates are maintained, the script looks for rate conflicts — instances where the From Currency, To Currency, and Conversion Rate Type are the same in more than one set of books, but where the daily rate differs.

If no conflicts are found, all the daily rates for that combination of From Currency, To Currency, and Conversion Rate Type from all of the sets of books are transferred into the new daily rate set for the Applications installation. If any conflicts are

found, no rates are transferred. This process is repeated for each combination of From Currency, To Currency, and Conversion Rate Type for which you maintain daily rates in your sets of books.

> **Attention:**   Any descriptive flexfields you have defined for your daily rates will not be transferred during the upgrade from Release 10.7 to 11*i*, even if no daily rates conflicts are found. To retain your descriptive flexfields, you must complete the Category 5 step, Migrate Conflicting Daily Rates to New or Existing Rate Types, after you upgrade.

After the upgrade, you will run a SQL*Plus script to migrate your daily rates to the new table. The script requires you to specify one of two options for handling the conflict. Your choice depends on your evaluation of the information in the Daily Rates Conflict report.

> **Caution: A review of your daily rates before the upgrade will provide important information you can use to resolve daily rates conflicts after the upgrade.**

Option 1: Choose daily rates for one set of books to use for all sets of books

For example, assume you have two sets of books in one Release 10.7 Applications installation. Each maintains daily rates for converting German marks to U.S. dollars (DM to USD), rate type Corporate. Also assume that rates for the first five days of December 1999 are:

Day	Rate for SOB 1	Rate for SOB 2
01-DEC-1999	.5757	.576
02-DEC-1999	.5759	.576
03-DEC-1999	.5761	.576
04-DEC-1999	.5763	.576
05-DEC-1999	.5765	.577

If you decide to use the daily rates from SOB 1 because they have greater precision than those in SOB 2, both sets of books in your Release 11*i* installation will use the SOB 1 rates for converting German marks to U.S. dollars. The SOB 2 rates will not be retained.

Option 2: Selectively retain daily rates for a set of books by migrating the rates to a new rate type

Using the same assumptions as the previous example, if you decide you want to keep the daily rates from both sets of books, you can migrate one of the sets of rates to a new rate type.

To review your daily rates before you upgrade:

1. Run the Daily Rates Conflict report from your new APPL_TOP:

    From the UNIX prompt:

    ```
    $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
    $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtrpp.sql
    ```

    From the NT prompt:

    ```
    C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
    C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtrpp.sql
    ```

2. Review the report to see if any daily rates conflict.

3. Review any conflicting rates online in each set of books to identify the nature of the conflict. Alternatively, run the Daily Rates Listing for each set of books and compare the reports manually.

    For example, you can instruct the post-upgrade script to migrate all the daily rates maintained in SOB 2 to a new rate type, Corp2. Then, you can instruct the script to migrate all daily rates maintained in SOB 1 to the rate type Corporate.

    > **Note:** The scripts you run to migrate daily rates after the upgrade are different from the script you ran previously to produce the Daily Rates Conflict report.

Step 2: Revise custom programs that automatically load daily rates (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

> **Attention:** Perform this step *only if* you currently use a custom process to load daily rates into Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger Release 10.7.

This release contains an open interface table (GL_DAILY_RATES_INTERFACE) for automatically loading daily rates. If you currently use a custom process to automatically populate the GL_DAILY_CONVERSION_RATES table, you must modify the process to use the new interface table in Release 11*i*. After the upgrade, test your customized loading process to ensure the daily conversion rates are being loaded correctly.

> **Warning:** **Loading daily rates directly into the GL_DAILY_ RATES table can corrupt your General Ledger data. This action is not supported by Oracle Corporation.**

> **Additional Information:** Entering Daily Rates, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*

Global Accounting Engine Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	1.	Verify accounting data model change (required)	Database Administrator
❏	2.	Ensure that all transactions are translated (required)	Application Specialist (Payables) / Application Specialist (Receivables)
❏	3.	Confirm update of the balance calculation data model (required)	Database Administrator
❏	4.	Calculate and verify balances for all existing accounting lines (conditionally required)	Application Specialist / Database Administrator
❏	5.	Close all accounting periods (required)	Application Specialist (Payables) / Application Specialist (Receivables)

Step 1: Verify accounting data model change (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**	

In prior releases, a transaction in your primary set of books could contain multiple accounting sequence IDs. However, transactions in your MRC reporting sets of books could contain only a single accounting sequence ID. An accounting data model change for the Global Accounting Engine was introduced in Release 11.0 with patch 1257205 (included in the patchset 11.0.AX.F, or later). With the new data model, you can assign categories to the same event types for both your primary and MRC reporting sets of books. Consequently, a transaction in your MRC reporting sets of books can now contain multiple accounting sequence IDs.

Verify status of data model patch

To verify that the new accounting data model patch was applied in Release 11.0, perform this step from the command line:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> desc AX_SLE_LINES;
```

If the application_id and set_of_books_id columns exist and are reported as NOT NULL columns, you have upgraded to the new 11.0 accounting data model. You must now complete the extract and copy of the files detailed below. If these columns do not exist, do *not* complete the extract and copy procedure — instead, omit that section of this step and proceed with the next step in the upgrade process.

Extract and copy files

Complete this step *only* if you have already applied patch 1257205 (or patchset 11.0.A.X.F, or later) to upgrade to the new accounting model. If you have not upgraded to the new accounting data model, do *not* complete this step.

Extract and copy the files in patch 1326885 to the following Release 11*i* locations:

```
cp 1326885/ax/admin/odf/axtab.odf $AX_TOP/admin/odf/axtab.odf
cp 1326885/ax/admin/sql/axxinpkx.sql $AX_TOP/admin/sql/axxinpkx.sql
cp 1326885/ax/admin/sql/axxincfk.sql $AX_TOP/admin/sql/axxincfk.sql
```

Step 2: Ensure that all transactions are translated (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables) /Application Specialist (Receivables)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Global Accounting Engine User's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**	

Submit all events per application and set of books to the Posting Manager for translation. The concurrent log file in the Posting Manager provides an overview of

untranslatable events. Check this file to ensure that there are no untranslatable events or events with the status of *Error*.

To list all events not translated by the Posting Manager, run axxpre01.sql from your new APPL_TOP. Untranslated events are ordered by application and set of books.

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpre01.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpre01.sql
```

Review the axxpre01.lst output file for untranslated events and verify that events included in this list do not need to be translated.

> **Note:** In Release 11*i*, AX translation rules now handle new data models in the subledger applications. Some event types are obsolete or have significantly changed. To ensure that existing transactions are accounted for using the existing translation rules, you must translate all transactions before you upgrade.

Step 3: Confirm update of the balance calculation data model (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Global Accounting Engine User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**	

Check that the balance calculation patch was applied to Release 10.7. From your new APPL_TOP, run the following:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpre02.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpre02.sql
```

If the script reports that the balance calculation was upgraded, this step is complete. If this script reports that the balance calculation was not upgraded, the balance calculation was not patched in Release 10.7. Go to Step 4.

Note that in Release 10.7, balances can only run for one year at a time. All balances for the year are recalculated each time that you run a balance report. If new transactions were created for a prior year, you must run a balance calculation for that year and again for each subsequent year. Releases 11 and 11*i* use a new data model for a balance calculation that includes a multi-year balance calculation. Only transactions that were not used in the previous balance calculation are used to update the balances. You do not need to recalculate the balance.

Step 4: Calculate and verify balances for all existing accounting lines (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Application Specialist/Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Global Accounting Engine User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**	

Perform this step only if you determined that the new balance calculation patch was not applied.

The new balance calculation depends on a new column in the AX_SLE_LINES table to determine if balances must be calculated. To ensure that balances are not calculated twice for the accounting lines, all accounting lines are marked as balanced as part of the post-upgrade step.

You must calculate the balances for all accounting lines before you upgrade by submitting balance reports for the latest period for each application and set of books. Do not create new accounting lines before you complete the post-upgrade steps or your balances will be incorrect. The balance reports are:

Name	Description
Supplier Balance by Account	Accounting Flexfield report run from the AX Payables Supervisor responsibility
Customer Balance by Account	Accounting Flexfield report run from the AX Receivables Supervisor responsibility
Organization Balance by Account	Accounting Flexfield report run from the AX Inventory Supervisor responsibility

Step 5: Close all accounting periods (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables and Receivables)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Payables User's Guide, Oracle Receivables User's Guide, Oracle Inventory User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**	

Close all prior periods in Oracle Payables, Receivables, and Inventory *only* for those sets of books that use the Global Accounting Engine. Likewise, *only* for sets of books using the Global Accounting Engine, close all current and future periods to prevent transactions during the upgrade. Perform this step from your old APPL_TOP.

> **Additional Information:** Closing an Accounting Period, *Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 10.7 or 11*; Opening and Closing Accounting Periods, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide, Release 10.7 or 11*; Maintaining Accounting Periods, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide, Release 10.7 or 11*

> **Additional Information:** Close all accounting periods - Standard and Average Costing (recommended), Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks, Category 3, Step 6.

Oracle Payables Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**1.**	Create accounting entries (information only)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)
❏	**2.**	Upgrade supplier and supplier site bank data for multiple supplier banks (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)
❏	**3.**	Choose payment method for future-dated payments (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)
❏	**4.**	Evaluate use of recoverable tax (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)

Step 1: Create accounting entries (information only)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)**
Reference manual: **No**	User must log off: **No**

The action formerly required in this step (applying patch 973972) is now included in your upgrade to 11.5.2. There is no need to apply this patch manually.

Step 2: Upgrade supplier and supplier site bank data for multiple supplier banks (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)**
Reference manual: **No**	User must log off this application: **No**

Complete this step only if you have existing supplier and supplier site remit-to bank information. Before Release 11, you could enter information for a single bank for each supplier or supplier site and we enabled the Multiple Supplier Banks feature for all suppliers. You can now enter the Banks and Bank Accounts windows information for an unlimited number of banks for each supplier or supplier site.

In an upgrade from 10.7, Payables can automatically build supplier bank information for you. Use the apmsbrep.sql report to review your existing supplier and supplier site bank information that will be transferred from the supplier tables to the banks tables. You can then update any supplier bank information that cannot be transferred unless you enter values for the following required columns: bank, branch, and account number.

Perform these steps from your old APPL_TOP. If you are using character-mode, use the Bank Accounts region of the Enter Vendor form (\Navigate Vendors Entry). If you are using GUI, choose Suppliers > Entry and use the Bank region of the Suppliers window. Then, choose Suppliers > Entry and click the Sites button. Use the Bank Accounts region of the Supplier Sites window to make the updates. You must complete the updates before the upgrade if you want to access your supplier bank data in Release 11*i*. After the upgrade, you can no longer access bank information from the GUI Suppliers window.

To run the apmsbrep.sql script, from the new APPL_TOP in the database user you want to upgrade, run the following:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apmsbrep.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apmsbrep.sql
```

The report output, apmsbrep.lst, shows what the upgrade is going to do, including the supplier bank information to be transferred, the bank records to be created, and the records that will not be transferred because they are missing required values. Review the report to see if you want to update supplier bank information before it is transferred. During the upgrade, the system transfers the supplier bank data from the PO_VENDORS and PO_VENDOR_SITES_ALL tables to the AP_BANK_BRANCHES, AP_BANK_ACCOUNTS_ALL, and AP_BANK_ACCOUNT_USES_ALL tables. You can review your supplier bank information in the Banks and Bank Accounts windows after the upgrade.

Step 3: Choose payment method for future-dated payments (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)**
Reference manual: **No**	User must log off this application: **Yes**

Perform only if you use future-dated payments or manual future-dated payments.

In Release 11*i*, you can use any payment method to create future-dated payments. Future Dated and Manual Future Dated payment method types are obsolete. The apboepre.sql script populates a temporary table that the upgrade uses to update the future payment method on existing invoices, payments, and payment formats. To use the script, select the payment method you want to replace the current future payment method: Check, EFT (Electronic), Wire, or Clearing. You can make one selection for Future Dated payment method and one for Manual Future Dated. Run this script only once from your new APPL_TOP.

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apboepre.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apboepre.sql
```

Enter the new payment method for the Future Payment method and for the Manual Future Dated payment method at the prompt. If you do not run this script, during the upgrade, the system automatically replaces Future Dated with EFT (Electronic) and Manual Future Dated with Check.

Step 4: Evaluate use of recoverable tax (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)**
Reference manual: **No**	User must log off this application: **Yes**

If you have NO recoverable tax in ANY operating unit, you may omit this step.

The Enable Recoverable Tax option is new in this release. Later in the upgrade process, the value of this option affects the way tax lines are flagged as recoverable or nonrecoverable which, in turn, affects the way the accounting entries are created during the upgrade of existing data. Also later in the upgrade, it affects the way data is populated in Recovery Rate, a new attribute of tax codes in this release.

The consequences of this step are significant. If in any operating unit, you have considered any tax as recoverable (such as in most VAT or GST regimes) in the past, or plan to do so in the future, it is *imperative* that you review this step carefully.

1. Run apaltfsp.sql.

   If you intend to use recoverable tax in any operating unit, run this script to add the column NON_RECOVERABLE_TAX_FLAG to the table FINANCIALS_ SYSTEM_PARAMS_ALL. Run this script only once from your new APPL_TOP.

   From the UNIX prompt:

   ```
   $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
   $ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apaltfsp.sql
   ```

   From the NT prompt:

   ```
   C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
   C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apaltfsp.sql
   ```

2. Run apfspre2.sql *or* apfspre1.sql.

   Choose one of these scripts based on your needs for recoverability.

   Option 1: If you have a single operating unit that uses recoverable tax, or if you have multiple operating units that ALL use recoverable tax, run the following script:

   From the UNIX prompt:

   ```
   $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
   $ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apfspre2.sql
   ```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apfspre2.sql
```

Run this script only once to update all operating units. It sets your Enable Recoverable Tax Financials option to Yes. Later in the upgrade, your tax codes will be updated to be 100% recoverable and the TAX_RECOVERABLE_FLAG for each of your existing tax lines will be set to Y (100% recoverable).

Option 2: If you have multiple operating units that have different tax recoverability structures, run the following script for each of those operating units that uses recoverable tax:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apfspre1.sql <org_id>
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apfspre1.sql <org_id>
```

For the operating unit you specify, the script sets your Enable Recoverable Tax Financials option to Yes. Later in the upgrade, your tax codes will be updated to 100% recoverable and the TAX_RECOVERABLE_FLAG for each of your existing tax lines will be set to Y (100% recoverable).

> **Warning:** The default value for Enable Recoverable Tax remains N for any operating unit for which you do not run this script. Should this happen on an operating unit that does, in fact, require recoverable tax, accounting entries will be created incorrectly, causing serious impact on future tax reporting.

Oracle Projects Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	1. Correct the week ending date and month ending date for summarization data for multilingual support (required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
❏	2. Correct excess revenue amounts data for hard limit funded agreements (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**3.**	Correct excess revenue accrued for non-adjusting negative amount expenditure items (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
❏	**4.**	Correct credit memo invoice dates (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
❏	**5.**	Correct bill amount data stored on revenue distributions (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
❏	**6.**	Correct billing hold data on reversing items (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
❏	**7.**	Correct billable flag data for reversing items (required)	Application Specialist (Projects)

Step 1: Correct the week ending date and month ending date for summarization data for multilingual support (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

This step relates to an ORA-01843 error in the Budgets form when the Copy Actual command is used in an MLS environment. The WEEK_ENDING_DATE and MONTH_ENDING_DATE columns in the PA_TXN_ACCUM table are VARCHAR2 datatypes, but these columns store dates. In an MLS environment, the date stored in these columns may not be in the language used by the database instance as determined by NLS_DATE_LANGUAGE or NLS_LANGUAGE (if the NLS_DATE_LANGUAGE parameter is NULL).

To find the exceptions, run patxnerr.sql. This script creates a temporary table PA_TXN_ACCUM_ERR to store the records that are in error. From your new APPL_TOP, type the following commands:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @patxnerr.sql <PA username> \
  <PA password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @patxnerr.sql <PA username> \
  <PA password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
```

Then, run patxnsql.sql.

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @patxnsql.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @patxnsql.sql
```

The script produces a report called txn_fix.lst, which is stored in your current working directory. The report has two sections:

Section 1 begins with this text: "The following records have been updated in PA_ TXN_ACCUM with the New_Week_Ending_Date and New_Month_Ending_Date". This section lists the records with the old and new values for the week_ending_date and month_ending_date columns.

Section 2 begins with the line "Please update the week_ending_date and month_ ending_date for the following records in PA_TXN_ACCUM". This section lists the records for which the WEEK_ENDING_DATE and MONTH_ENDING_DATE columns could not be updated.

You must update manually any records listed in Section 2. The month must be in the language of the database server instance. After making the corrections, run patxnsql.sql again to ensure that corrections have been made. You must perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 2: Correct excess revenue amounts data for hard limit funded agreements (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Perform this step only if you have Project Billing installed.

The pa620118.sql script relates to accrued revenue that exceeds hard limit funded agreements. It lists the project/tasks whose revenue has exceeded the hard limit funding amount. This script may take a long time to run. From your new APPL_ TOP, type:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa620118.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa620118.sql
```

The script produces a report called pa620118.lst, which lists the project and task number, agreement number, and the amount by which revenue has exceeded the funding limit. To correct the data, create a write-off revenue event for each excess revenue amount listed in the report.

You must perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 3: Correct excess revenue accrued for non-adjusting negative amount expenditure items (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

This step pertains to non-adjusting negative amount expenditure items accruing overstated revenue amounts during the Generate Draft Revenue process. Oracle Projects now generates the correct revenue amount. Run pa661335.sql from your new APPL_TOP to report existing overstated revenue.

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa661335.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa661335.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number. You can enter a range of projects to reduce processing time. The script produces a report called pa661335.lst, which lists the project and task number, expenditure type, quantity, and accrued revenue for all expenditure items where revenue is accrued beyond the soft limit. To correct the data, from your old APPL_TOP, enter a Recalculate Revenue adjustment for each of the expenditure items listed in the report.

1. Choose Expenditures > Expenditure Inquiry select either Project or All to navigate to the Find Project Expenditure Items window.

2. Query for the expenditure items you want to correct.

3. Choose Recalc Revenue from the Special menu.

4. Repeat this procedure for each of the listed expenditure items.

After you enter the Recalculate Revenue adjustments, run the Generate Draft Revenue process from the Submit Request window (Requests > Run) for each affected project.

> **Additional Information:** Expenditure Adjustments, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

You must perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 4: Correct credit memo invoice dates (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

Before this upgrade, Projects allowed release of a credit memo with an AR invoice date earlier than the AR invoice date of the original invoice. Oracle Receivables rejected such credit memos during the AutoInvoice Process. Run pa652811.sql from your new APPL_TOP to report existing credit memos with an AR invoice date earlier than the original AR invoice date.

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa652811.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa652811.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number. You can enter a range of projects to reduce processing time. The script produces a report called pa652811.lst, which lists the project number, credit invoice number, original invoice number, credit memo date, and Oracle Receivables invoice number for all credit memos with an invoice date earlier than the original invoice date. To correct the data, update the AR Invoice Date for each credit memo in the report by following these steps from your old APPL_TOP:

1. Navigate to the Find Invoice window (choose Billing > Invoice Review).

2. Query for the credit memo you want to correct.

3. Change the AR Invoice Date to a date on or after the invoice date of the original invoice. You can make this change in the Invoice Summary window or by opening the credit invoice.

4. Repeat these steps for each credit memo in the report pa652811.lst.

> **Additional Information:**   Reviewing Invoices, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

You must perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 5: Correct bill amount data stored on revenue distributions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

Before this upgrade, billing amounts were not stored in revenue distribution lines on "Accrue as work Occurs - Bill as work Occurs" projects. This resulted in the Oracle error "ORA-1400: cannot INSERT null value" during the Generate Draft Invoices process. Run pardlrpt.sql from your new APPL_TOP to report expenditure items that contain this error.

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pardlrpt.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pardlrpt.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number. Enter a range of projects to reduce processing time. The script produces an exception report called pardlrpt.lst, which lists the project name, task number, expenditure item ID, expenditure type, quantity, and amount for all expenditure items whose billing amounts should have been stored in the revenue distribution lines. If no exceptional expenditure items are reported, then your data is correct and you can ignore the remaining steps. To correct the data, run these steps from your old APPL_TOP.

1. Recalculate revenue

   Perform Recalculate Revenue adjustments on the listed expenditure items. Choose Expenditures > Expenditure Inquiry, and enter criteria to find the expenditure items you want to adjust.

   After you adjust the expenditure items, run the Generate Draft Revenue process, from the Submit Request window (Requests > Run), for each affected project.

2. Re-run the Exception report

   Run pardlrpt.sql again. If any expenditure items area reported, go back to the previous step. Repeat these two steps until no expenditure items are listed.

3. Create temporary table

   Run pacrttab.sql. This script creates the temporary table pa_bug_644714. The temporary table stores the following audit information about the updated revenue distribution lines:

expenditure_item_id	line_num
creation_date	new_bill_amount
old_draft_inv_num	old_draft_inv_item_line_num

   To run the script, type the following commands from your new APPL_TOP:

   From the UNIX prompt:

   ```
   $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pacrttab.sql
   ```

   From the NT prompt:

   ```
   C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pacrttab.sql
   ```

4. Correct the data

   Run pardlupd.sql from your new APPL_TOP to correct your data. It prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number. You can run the script for a range of projects at a time, but be sure that you run the script for all projects.

   From the UNIX prompt:

   ```
   $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
   ```

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pardlupd.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pardlupd.sql
```

> **Additional Information:** Expenditure Adjustments, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

You must perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 6: Correct billing hold data on reversing items (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

This step pertains to manual reversals of expenditure items whose Bill Hold flag was set to Yes. Prior to this upgrade, these items were created with the Bill Hold flag set to No rather than Yes, and therefore the reversals could be invoiced. Run painv.sql from your new APPL_TOP to report expenditure items with this error.

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @painv.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @painv.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and an End Project Number. You can use these parameters to run the script for a range of projects at a time. *If you do this, you must still make sure that you run the script for all projects.*

The script produces an exception report called painv.lst, which has two sections:

- List of Projects Against Released Invoices. Lists project/top task bill amounts that are incorrectly invoiced where the incorrect invoices are already released.

- List of Projects Against Unreleased Invoices. Lists projects against which incorrect invoices exist, where the invoices are not yet released.

To correct the released invoices, create top task level events in the amounts shown in the report for the specified project/tasks. From your old APPL_TOP:

1. Choose Billing > Events select either Project or All to navigate to the Find Project Events window. Query for the project that you want to correct.

2. Choose New to display the Event Details window.

3. Enter the Task Number of the top task listed in the report.

4. Select an Event Type that has an event classification of Write-On.

5. In the Bill Amount field, enter the amount listed in painv.lst for the project and task.

6. Complete the Event Date, Organization, and Description fields. Save your work.

7. Repeat these steps for each overstated amount on the report.

After you create the events, run the Generate Draft Invoices process for the affected projects.

To correct the unreleased invoices, run the datafix script pa858651.sql. This script sets the "bill hold" flag for the reversed expenditure items to Yes and regenerates the invoices for the projects listed. Run the script from your new APPL_TOP.

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa858651.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa858651.sql
```

> **Additional Information:** Events, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

You must perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 7: Correct billable flag data for reversing items (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

This step pertains to expenditure items that were adjusted from billable to non-billable or vice versa. Prior to this upgrade, when these expenditure items were reversed, the reversing expenditure items were created with the Billable flag set to the original value, rather than the adjusted value.

To correct the flag settings, run the reporting script pacstrev.sql. This script reports projects that have associated expenditure items in error and indicates which processes you need to run after you run the datafix script. Be sure that you run this reporting script (pacstrev.sql) before you run the datafix script (pa882573.sql), so that you know which processes to run after you correct the data.

To run the reporting script:
Type the following commands from your new APPL_TOP:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pacstrev.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pacstrev.sql
```

The script produces an exception report (pacstrev.lst), which contains two sections:

- Cost Distribution needs to be run for the following projects. Lists projects for which you must run the cost distribution processes after you run the datafix script.

- Revenue Distribution/Asset Accumulation needs to be run for the following projects. Lists projects for which you must run the Generate Draft Revenue process or the Generate Asset Lines process after you run the datafix script.

The report lists each project and the associated project type.

- If the project type indicates that the project is a contract project, you must run the Generate Draft Revenue process for the project after you correct the data.

- If the project type indicates that the project is a capital project, you must run the Generate Asset Lines process for the project after you correct the data.

To correct the data, run the datafix script pa882573.sql. You must enter starting and ending project numbers when the script prompts for these values.

This script corrects the Billable flag for the reversed expenditure items that are in error, and marks the items for cost recalculation (sets the COST_DISTRIBUTED_

FLAG to N). The script also sets the REVENUE_DISTRIBUTED_FLAG to No if either of the following conditions is true:

- The expenditure item is charged to a capital project.

- The expenditure item is charged to a contract project with a revenue accrual method or invoicing method of Work, AND the original item was non-billable and has not been revenue distributed, AND the billable reversing item has been revenue distributed.

To run the datafix script:
Type the following commands from your new APPL_TOP:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa882573.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa882573.sql
```

After you run this script, run the required cost distribution, revenue distribution, and asset line generation processes according to the exception report (pacstrev.lst). Use the Submit Request window (Requests > Run).

For the projects that require cost distribution and/or revenue distribution processes, run the Update Project Summary Amounts process. Use the Project Status Inquiry windows to verify the corrected amounts.

> **Note:** The new billable and non-billable summary amounts generated after this datafix will be displayed in the earliest open period. This period may be different from the period in which the original expenditure item was reversed.

You must perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Oracle Purchasing Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❑	**1.** Clear open interface tables (required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator

Step 1: Clear open interface tables (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	User must log off this application: **No**
Requires concurrent manager: **Yes**	

If there are unprocessed records in the Requisitions Open Interface, Purchasing Documents Open Interface, and Receiving Open Interface tables, you will need to clear the affected table before you upgrade by importing the data successfully into Purchasing. For example, if there are rows in the Requisitions Open Interface from a previous MRP run, run the Requisition Import process in Purchasing to make sure that all rows are processed successfully.

If any rows fail validation, find the errors and correct them. If you cannot fix certain errors, examine the data that is in error. If the data is old or obsolete, you may ignore the errors and continue with the upgrade.

To check to see whether data exists in the open interface tables:
First, check to see whether data exists in the open interface tables. Then, clear the affected tables as necessary.

1. Log in to SQL*Plus.

   From the UNIX prompt:

   ```
   $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @
   ```

   From the NT prompt:

   ```
   C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @
   ```

2. Run each of the following scripts:

   ```
   pocntreq.sql
   pocntpoh.sql
   ```

```
pocntrcv.sql
```

The first script is for the Requisitions Open Interface, the second for the Purchasing Documents Open Interface and the third for the Receiving Open Interface. If a script returns a number greater than 0, then you have data in that open interface. The following instructions tell you how to clear the data from the affected open interface. If the script returns 0, then you do not have data in the open interface, and you do not need to clear it.

To clear rows in the Requisitions Open Interface tables:

1. In the Purchasing responsibility, choose Reports > Run and submit the Requisition Import program. To make sure that you process all data in the interface tables, you can leave the Import Source and Import Batch Identification fields blank.

2. Choose Reports > Run and submit the Requisition Import Exceptions report. Use this report to see if errors occurred while running Requisition Import. Correct any errors and re-run Requisition Import until no more errors occur.

> **Additional Information:** Requisition Import Process *(Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 10.7, 11, or 11i)*; Requisition Import Exceptions Report *(Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 10.7, 11, or 11i)*

To clear rows in the Purchasing Documents Open Interface tables:

1. In the Purchasing responsibility, choose Reports > Run and submit the Purchasing Documents Open Interface program. Choose Reports > Run again and submit the Purchasing Interface Errors Report.

Review the Purchasing Interface Errors report to see if errors occurred while running Purchasing Documents Open Interface. Correct any errors and re-run the Purchasing Documents Open Interface program until no more errors occur. If you are upgrading from Release 11.0.3, you can submit the Purge Purchasing Open Interface Processed Data program to remove all processed data in the Purchasing Documents Open Interface tables. Note that this program removes

only data that has been either accepted or rejected. It does not remove data that is still pending.

> **Additional Information:**   Purchasing Documents Open Interface *(Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 11 or 11i)*; Purchasing Interface Errors Report *(Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 11 or 11i)*

To clear rows in the Receiving Open Interface tables:

1. In the Purchasing responsibility, choose Reports > Run and submit the Receiving Transaction Processor. Then, submit the Receiving Interface Errors report.

    Review the Receiving Interface Errors report to if errors occurred while running the Receiving Transaction Processor. Correct any errors and re-run the Receiving Transaction Processor until no more errors occur.

2. If you have Advance Shipment Notices with billing information (ASBNs) in the Receiving Open Interface, choose Reports > Run in the Purchasing responsibility to submit the Purchasing Interface Errors report.

    In the Parameters window, select Receiving Open Interface in the Source Program field. Use this report to see what errors occurred, if any, while the Receiving Open Interface created invoices from ASBNs. Correct any errors and re-run the Receiving Transaction Processor until no more errors occur.

    > **Additional Information:**   Receiving Transaction Processor *(Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 10.7, 11, or 11i)*; Receiving Interface Errors Report *(Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 11 or 11i)*; Purchasing Interface Errors Report *(Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 11 or 11i)*

Country-specific Financials Product Family

The following Category 2 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Country-specific Financials product family.

Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks

Checklist			Perform for this country...
❏	**1.**	Record lookup codes that will be truncated or renamed (recommended)	All
❏	**2.**	Move government uniform invoice information for each organization (conditionally required)	Taiwan
❏	**3.**	Move customer uniform numbers and tax registration numbers (conditionally required)	Taiwan
❏	**4.**	Move supplier uniform numbers and tax registration numbers (conditionally required)	Taiwan
❏	**5.**	Record uniform numbers for your company (recommended)	Taiwan
❏	**6.**	Record Canadian tax setup (required)	Canada
❏	**7.**	Print tax rebate and rule listings (recommended)	Canada

Step 1: Record lookup codes that will be truncated or renamed (recommended)

Perform for this country: **All**	Perform if upgrading from: **Production 16.1 (or higher), 11.0**
Performed by: **System Administrator**	Reference manual: **No**
Users must log off: **No**	

During the upgrade, lookup codes that are more than 30 bytes long are truncated automatically to 30 bytes. Also, duplicate lookup code meanings within a lookup type are renamed automatically to make them unique within the lookup type.

To prepare for these modifications, you should record any lookup codes that are more than 30 bytes long so you can redefine them if necessary after the upgrade is complete. You should also record any duplicate lookup meanings of lookup codes so that you can rename them if necessary after the upgrade. Run this script from your new APPL_TOP to identify these types of lookup codes and lookup meanings:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jamlsmck.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jamlsmck.sql
```

> **Note:** The jamlsmck.sql script does not include lookups that are obsolete in this release. The upgrade does not migrate obsolete lookups. For more information, refer to the *Product Update Notes* for Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific.

If your customized modules reference truncated lookup codes or renamed lookup meanings, you may need to modify the migrated lookups or the customized modules accordingly after upgrading to Release 11*i*.

No seeded lookup codes are affected by the truncation. Some meanings for seeded lookup codes may be renamed if you are using multiple sets of books, but Oracle Applications generic modules reference only lookup codes, not their meanings.

Step 2: Move government uniform invoice information for each organization (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Taiwan**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **System Administrator**	Users must log off: **No**
Reference manual: **No**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**

All previous Oracle Financials for Taiwan windows are now obsolete. During the upgrade, export certificate and other government uniform invoice information is moved to either globalization flexfields or Oracle Receivables windows.

To prepare for this modification, use the jatwupg1.sql script to record existing government uniform invoice information so that you can redefine the information after the upgrade, if necessary. If you are using multi-organization architecture, specify the organization ID (at the prompt) that you want to report on.

To record existing government uniform invoice information:
Run jatwupg1.sql by typing:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg1.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg1.sql
```

Review output in <Org ID>jatwupg1.lst before proceeding.

> **Note:** To avoid overwriting output files, the script appends your organization ID to the output file. If you leave the Org ID prompt blank, the output file name is jatwupg1.lst.

To move government uniform invoice information:
All government uniform invoice attributes are assigned to transactions. Use the jatwupg2.sql script to migrate invoice format data. Run this script by typing:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg2.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg2.sql
```

Review output in <Org ID>jatwupg2.log after the script finishes.

The script performs the following actions:

- Updates only complete transactions in closed periods. Reassign a new transaction source and regenerate government uniform invoice numbers for all incomplete transactions.

- moves government uniform invoice information defined in the Define Uniform Invoices/Sales Receipts window to the Transactions window and its globalization flexfield. The field mapping is:

Release 10.7 or 11.0 Field Name (Define Uniform Invoices/Sales Receipts)	Release 11*i* Field Name (Transactions)
Invoice Format	Invoice Format (hidden segment in globalization flexfield)
Uniform Invoice Word + Uniform Invoices/Sales No	Legacy Uniform Invoice (segment in the globalization flexfield)
Void	Status (base product field in the More alternate name region)
Wine/Cigarette	Wine/Cigarette (segment in the globalization flexfield)

Note: The script does not update the government uniform invoice date in the Define Uniform Invoices/Sales Receipts window. In 11*i*, transaction dates are also government uniform invoice dates. The script overwrites the Status field in the Transactions window with *Void* for voided government uniform invoices. Do not run the script if you do not want to change existing transaction statuses.

- In Release 11*i*, you enter export certificate information in the Transactions window globalization flexfield. This script also moves export certificate information that was entered in the Release 10.7 or 11.0 Define Zero-Rate Uniform Invoices window to the Transactions window globalization flexfield. The field mapping is:

Release 10.7 or 11.0 Field Name (Define Zero-Rate Uniform Invoices)	Release 11*i* Field Name (Transactions)
Number	Export Certificate Number (segment in globalization flexfield)
Name	Export Name (segment in the globalization flexfield)
Export Method	Export Method (segment in the globalization flexfield)
Export Date	Export Date (segment in the globalization flexfield)

Note: The script does not migrate government uniform invoice information entered in the Define Miscellaneous Uniform Invoices window. Other fields not merged with transactions are Type (Zero-Rate/Exempt/Taxable) and Item Description.

Step 3: Move customer uniform numbers and tax registration numbers (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Taiwan**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **System Administrator**	Users must log off: **No**
Reference manual: **No**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**

In Release 10.7 and 11.0, customer uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) are stored in the Tax Registration Number field in the Customers window. In 11*i*, the Customers window has both a Taxpayer ID and a Tax Registration Number field. You will use two scripts to complete this step: jatwupg4.sql moves the customer uniform number to the Taxpayer ID field, and jatwupg3.sql records existing customer uniform

numbers and tax registration numbers so you can redefine the numbers after the upgrade, if necessary.

To record existing customer uniform numbers and tax registration numbers:
Run jatwupg3.sql by typing:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg3.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg3.sql
```

Review the output in jatwupg3.lst and keep the file for your records.

To move customer uniform numbers:
Run this script to move customer uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) in the Tax Registration Number field to the Taxpayer ID field:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg4.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg4.sql
```

Review the jatwupg4.log file after the script finishes.

The jatwupg4.sql script overwrites the Taxpayer ID field in the Release 11*i* Customers window with data from the Release 10.7 or 11 Tax Registration Number field and makes the Tax Registration Number field blank.

> **Warning:** ***Do not*** **run this script if you want to keep the existing data in the Taxpayer ID and Tax Registration Number fields. *Do not* run this script if multiple countries share your database, as it updates all customer taxpayer ID information regardless of whether the information is entered in a Taiwanese responsibility.**

Step 4: Move supplier uniform numbers and tax registration numbers (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Taiwan**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **System Administrator**	Users must log off: **No**
Reference manual: **No**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**

In Release 10.7 and 11, supplier uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) were stored in the globalization flexfield of the Suppliers window. In Release 11*i*, the Suppliers window contains both Taxpayer ID and Tax Registration Number fields. You will use two scripts to complete this step: jatwupg6.sql moves the supplier uniform numbers from the Suppliers window globalization flexfield to the Suppliers window Taxpayer ID field, and jatwupg5.sql records existing supplier uniform numbers and tax registration numbers so you can redefine the numbers after the upgrade, if necessary.

To record existing supplier uniform numbers:
To run jatwupg5.sql, type:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg5.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg5.sql
```

Review output in jatwupg5.lst and keep the file for your records.

To move supplier uniform numbers and tax registration numbers:
Use the jatwupg6.sql script to transfer the supplier uniform numbers (taxpayer ID) from the Uniform Number globalization flexfield segment to the Taxpayer ID field of the Suppliers window. The script will not update the Taxpayer ID field unless it is blank, so you should make sure there is no data in this field.

Run this script to update the *blank* Taxpayer ID field with supplier uniform numbers:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg6.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg6.sql
```

Step 5: Record uniform numbers for your company (recommended)

Perform for this country: **Taiwan**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **System Administrator**	Users must log off: **No**
Reference manual: **Oracle Financials for Taiwan**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**

In Release 10.7 and 11.0, uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) are defined in the System Options window globalization flexfield. To view this globalization flexfield online and manually record these uniform numbers, as the Taiwanese Receivables Manager, navigate to Accounts Receivable > Set Up > System > System Options. Repeat this step for all organizations. You must enter these uniform numbers in the Locations window after the upgrade because, in Release 11*i*, company uniform numbers are defined in the Locations window.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Financials for Taiwan User's Guide*

Step 6: Record Canadian tax setup (required)

Perform for this country: **Canada**	Perform if upgrading from: **10SC Production 16.1 with Multiple Tax Distribution (MTD) patch applied, 11.0**
Performed by: **System Administrator**	Users must log off: **No**
Reference manual: **No**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**

Release 11*i* provides an integrated approach to meet Canadian tax requirements. Input Tax Groups (ITG), a new feature of the Enterprise Tax solution, replaces Release 10.7/11 Multiple Tax Distributions (MTD) functionality.

Run the jacaupgr.sql script to record your tax setup information. Review the jacaupgr.lst output file generated in the current working directory that you ran the script from. Use the information in the output file to set up Input Tax Groups.

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jacaupgr.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jacaupgr.sql
```

> **Additional Information:** See the Upgrading to 11*i* appendix in the *Oracle Financials for Canada User's Guide* for more details.

Step 7: Print tax rebate and rule listings (recommended)

Perform for this country: **Canada**	Perform if upgrading from: **10SC Production 16.1 with Multiple Tax Distribution (MTD) patch applied, 11.0**
Performed by: **Application Specialist**	Users must log off: **No**
Reference manual: **No**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**

The jacarmpr.sql script generates the jacarmpr.lst output file in the current working directory that you ran the script from. The output file displays tax rebate and recovery rules. You can use this information to define recovery rules.

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jacarmpr.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jacarmpr.sql
```

Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks

Checklist			Perform for this country...
❑	1.	Update Swedish EFT payment format information (required)	Sweden
❑	2.	Pay Danish EFT invoices (conditionally required)	Denmark

Step 1: Update Swedish EFT payment format information (required)

Perform for this country: **Sweden**	Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**
Performed by: **Database Administrator**	Users must log off: **Yes**
Reference manual: **Patch 1094200 readme file**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**

Oracle Financials for Sweden users must apply patch 1094200 to update payment format information and store in new fields the information for bank accounts that

are assigned to suppliers that are paid with the Swedish payment formats and Swedish foreign payment formats. This patch is available on Oracle*MetaLink*.

> **Warning: You must follow the instructions in the readme file carefully when you apply this patch. Perform the manual steps outlined in the readme *only* if you have *not* previously applied patch 1094200 — otherwise, your data will be corrupted.**

To verify whether patch 1094200 has already been applied, check the version numbers of the formatting files. If the version numbers are greater than or equal to the versions listed below, you *do not* have to apply the patch.

Formatting File	Version Number
JESEPBAI.sql	110.15
JESEPBSI.sql	110.11
JESEPBUT.sql	110.5
JESEPPOI.sql	110.15
JESEPPOU.sql	110.15

Step 2: Pay Danish EFT invoices (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Denmark**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **Product Manager (Financials for Denmark)**	Users must log off: **No**
Reference manual: **Oracle Payables User's Guide**, **Oracle Financials for Denmark User's Guide**	

In Release 11*i*, Oracle Financials for Denmark replaces the Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) payment process (from Release 10.7 and 11) with Electronic Data Interchange (EDI). If you have any invoices that you need to pay with the EFT payment process rather than the EDI payment process, you must pay these invoices before you upgrade. After the upgrade, only the EDI process is available.

Oracle Financials for the Americas Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
❑ 1. Upgrade Brazilian subledgers data structure (conditionally required)	Brazil

Checklist			Perform for this country...
❑	2.	Identify and correct duplicate rows in JL_BR_LOOKUPS (conditionally required)	Brazil

Step 1: Upgrade Brazilian subledgers data structure (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Brazil**	Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**
Performed by: **System Administrator/Application Specialist (Payables and Receivables)**	Users must log off: **Yes**
Reference manual: **No**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**

Complete this step only if you have *not* applied 11.0.3 JL.D Mini-Pack (Patch 1056710). Run jlbrsusl.sql to determine whether you must apply patch 1154992 (depending on which patches are already applied to your product). Patch 1154992 modifies Brazilian Journals and Balances table structure and related indexes. The patches also repopulate journals and balances data in these tables. You can find this patch on Oracle*MetaLink*. Read the instructions in the README file carefully.

To determine whether to apply patch 1154992:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlbrsusl.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlbrsusl.sql
```

Review the jlbrsusl.lst output file. No matter which patches are already applied, or are being applied, make sure that the subledger account balances are correct. Run the concurrent programs Accounts Payables Period Balance Calculation and Accounts Receivables Period Balance Calculation, and verify the results.

Step 2: Identify and correct duplicate rows in JL_BR_LOOKUPS (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Brazil**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **Application Specialist**	Users must log off: **No**

The upgrade moves the data in the JL_BR_LOOKUPS table to the FND_LOOKUPS table. For this move, row descriptions in the FND_LOOKUPS table must be unique

up to the first 30 characters. When the upgrade runs, these lookups will be transferred and all descriptions will be truncated. Run jlmlsmck.sql to check for rows with the same description:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlmlsmck.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlmlsmck.sql
```

Review the duplicates on screen. You use the QuickCodes window to correct descriptions in the JL_BR_LOOKUPS table. From the Brazilian General Information responsibility, navigate to General > Setup > QuickCodes.

HRMS Product Family

The following Category 2 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the HRMS product family.

Oracle Human Resources Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❑	**1.**	Update taskflow definitions (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Update taskflow definitions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **Release 10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

You should not use apostrophe (') or percent (%) characters to create taskflow names or nodes. If you have, you must remove them before you upgrade. To identify taskflow names or nodes that contain these characters, run petskwrn.sql.

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @petskwrn.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @petskwrn.sql
```

Manually delete any apostrophe or percent characters identified by the script.

Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family

The following Category 2 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Manufacturing and Distribution product family. Because they are closely related, the tasks for Oracle Inventory, Oracle Cost Management, and Oracle Work in Process are listed under a single heading.

Oracle e-Commerce Gateway Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	**1.** Report output interface data file definitions (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	**2.** Report cross-reference data definitions (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Report output interface data file definitions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

> **Warning:** The upgrade refreshes all e-Commerce Gateway seed data. Your current output interface data file definitions will be lost at that time.

The ECEUGR.sql (for Release 10.7) and ECELAYDR.sql (for Release 11.0) scripts generate a report of your output interface definitions before the upgrade. You can use these reports after the upgrade to restore your definitions. Enter the name of the output file and the transaction code (select from list of values) at the prompts.

For Release 10.7:
Run ECEUGR.sql from your new APPL_TOP.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR.sql
```

For Release 11.0:
Run ECELAYDR.sql from your new APPL_TOP.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECELAYDR.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECELAYDR.sql
```

Step 2: Report cross-reference data definitions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

> **Warning:** The upgrade refreshes all e-Commerce Gateway seed data. Your current cross-reference data will be lost at that time.

The ECEUGR2.sql (for Release 10.7) and ECEXREFR.sql (for Release 11.0) scripts generate a report of your cross-reference definitions before the upgrade. You can use these reports after the upgrade to restore the definitions. Enter the name of the output file and the transaction code (select from list of values) at the prompts.

For Release 10.7:
Run ECEUGR2.sql from your new APPL_TOP.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR2.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR2.sql
```

For Release 11.0:
Run ECEXREFR.sql from your new APPL_TOP.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEXREFR.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEXREFR.sql
```

Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks

Checklist			Menu Responsibility>function
❏	**1.**	Find and correct items with no primary unit of measure - INV (required)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory
❏	**2.**	Purge unwanted transaction history - INV (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory
❏	**3.**	Clear Open Job and Schedule Interface table - WIP (conditionally required)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > WIP

Step 1: Find and correct items with no primary unit of measure - INV (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / Application Specialist (Inventory)**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

Items with no primary unit of measure may cause the upgrade to fail. To find these items, run this script from your new APPL_TOP:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invuomch.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invuomch.sql
```

The output from invuomch.sql is written to invuomch.lis in the current directory. Correct items identified by assigning them a primary unit of measure. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Inventory function. Navigate to Items > Master Items. Use the Unit of Measure field in the Physical Attributes tabbed region.

> **Additional Information:** Defining Items, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide, Release 10.7* or *11*

Step 2: Purge unwanted transaction history - INV (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator/Application Specialist (Inventory)**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

If you have accumulated a significant amount of transaction history data, upgrading it can take a very long time. To purge unwanted transaction history, run the following script from your new APPL_TOP:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invtxnpg.sql <purge cutoff date> \
  <organization code> <rows per commit>
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invtxnpg.sql <purge cutoff date> \
  <organization code> <rows per commit>
```

The script requires three arguments:

purge cutoff date Only transactions before this date will be purged. The date must be in YYYY-MM-DD format. For example, 1992-01-29.

organization code Only transactions in this organization will be purged. If you want to run the purge for several organizations, you must call the script once for each organization. You choose the organization code when you log in to Oracle Inventory.

rows per commit Depending on how large your rollback segments are, you can vary the number of rows that are deleted per commit. The larger this number, the faster the purge, and the larger the rollback segment required.

> **Warning:** **Purged transactions do not appear on the Accrual Reconciliation report. Do not purge any transactions you want to appear on this report (typically, purchase order receipt and return transactions).**

Step 3: Clear Open Job and Schedule Interface table - WIP (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (WIP)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Work in Process User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**	

All unprocessed records must be removed from the Open Job and Schedule Interface table (WIP_JOB_SCHEDULE_ INTERFACE) before you upgrade. Prior to clearing this table, however, import unprocessed records into Work in Process. If any records fail validation, find the errors and correct them. Then, run wipcjsi.sql to clear any unprocessed records. Perform these steps from your old APPL_TOP

To import unprocessed records:

1. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the WIP function. Navigate to the Import Jobs and Schedules window (Discrete>Import Jobs and Schedules). It opens the Import Jobs and Schedules and the Parameters windows. The Parameters window is active.

2. In the Parameters window Group ID field, enter a Group ID number.

3. In the Print Report field, select Yes if you want to print the report.

4. Choose OK to close the Parameters window (the Import Jobs and Schedules window is activated).

5. In the Import Jobs and Schedules window, select the Submit Request button to run the WIP Mass Load program.

If a record (row) fails validation and is not imported, an error message is generated. View errors and update failed rows from the Pending Jobs and Schedules window.

To view errors and update failed rows:

1. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the WIP function. Navigate to the Pending Jobs and Schedules window (Repetitive>Pending Jobs and Schedules). The Pending Jobs and Schedules window and the Find Pending

Jobs and Schedules window open. The Find Pending Jobs and Schedules window is active.

2. In the Find Pending Jobs and Schedules window, enter your selection criteria.

3. Choose Find (the Find Pending Jobs and Schedules window closes).

4. In the Pending Jobs and Schedules window, select the failed record (Status-Error).

5. Choose Errors (the Pending Job and Schedule Errors window displays the results).

The error Type indicates whether the failed record produced an Error or a Warning. Message explains why the transaction failed. Using these messages, you can determine what fields need to be updated.

> **Additional Information:**   Importing Jobs and Schedules and Processing Pending Jobs and Schedules, *Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual, Release 10.7; Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 11*

To clear the Open Job and Schedule Interface:
Run wipcjsi.sql to clear the Open Job and Schedule Interface table. Run this script *only* after validating that all desired Job and Schedule Interface requests have been loaded and that all users have logged off. For example:

From the UNIX prompt:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wipcjsi.sql
```

From the NT prompt:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wipcjsi.sql
```

> **Additional Information:**   Open Job and Schedule Interface, *Oracle Manufacturing, Distribution, Sales; Service Open Interfaces Manual, Release 11*

Oracle Order Management Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	**1.** Run Order Entry Interface programs (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping

Checklist			Performed by
❏	2.	Close eligible orders (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping
❏	3.	Run Order Import program (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping
❏	4.	Run Auto-create Installed Base program for Services (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping
❏	5.	Make sure orders are in a status supported by Order Management (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping
❏	6.	Close open pick slips/picking batches or open deliveries/departures (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping
❏	7.	Run the Shipping Interface programs (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping
❏	8.	Review Item Validation Org settings (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping
❏	9.	Validate inventory organization data (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping
❏	10.	Review cycles that may not be upgraded (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping

Step 1: Run Order Entry Interface programs (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

All Order Entry interface tables must be empty before you upgrade to Order Management because the Order Management upgrade does not include data from interface tables (with the exception of the RMA interface table). To prepare the tables for the upgrade, run the following interface programs *in the order listed*:

- RMA Interface (Orders, Returns > Returns > RMA Interface)

- Receivables Interface (Orders, Returns > Receivables Interface)

- Inventory Interface (Shipping > Interfaces). Enter Inventory interface in the Name field.

- Demand Interface (Orders, Returns > Schedule > Demand Interface)

- Service Interface (Orders, Returns > Service Interface)

Step 2: Close eligible orders (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

Close all orders that are eligible for closing (even though the Close Eligible status is supported by the Order Management upgrade). Closing orders speeds up your upgrade. Select Orders, Returns > Close Orders from the menu.

Step 3: Run Order Import program (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

The Order Import Interface tables must be empty before the Order Management upgrade. Select Orders, Returns > Import Orders from the menu.

Step 4: Run Auto-create Installed Base program for Services (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

You must run the Auto-create Installed Base program before you move to the new system to ensure that all data has been transferred out of the Order Entry Service Details Interface tables. Select Installed Base > Auto Create Installed Base.

Step 5: Make sure orders are in a status supported by Order Management (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

Make sure Orders Headers and Order Lines are in a status that is supported by Order Management. The following table shows supported statuses. Workflow history is not created for closed lines or orders.

Seeded Action	Allowed Status (other than NULL and Not Applicable)	Status Not Allowed	Comments
For Orders:			
Booking	All		
Cancel Orders	All		
Close/Complete	18 - Eligible		
For Order Lines:			
Pick Release	4 - Released, 5 - Partial, 18 - Eligible		
Back Order Release	4 - Released, 5 - Partial, 18 - Eligible		
Ship Confirm	5 - Partial, 6 - Confirmed, 7 - Backordered Completed, 22 - Backordered Partial	18 - Eligible	Ship Confirm the Line
Receivables Interface	5 - Partial, 9 - Interfaced to AR, 18 - Eligible		
Close/Complete	18 - Eligible		
Inventory Interface	5 - Partially Interfaced, 14 - Interfaced	13 - Interface Error	Fix errors and run Interface program
		18 - Eligible	Run Inventory Interface program
Cancel Line	All		
Service Interface	14 - Interfaced	18 - Eligible	Run the Service Interface program
Purchase Release	5 - Partial, 6 - Confirmed, 14 - Interfaced, 18 - Eligible		
Manufacturing Release	18 - Eligible	4 - Released	Run the Auto-create config program
	19 - Work Order Completed	20 - WO partially completed	Complete work order
		21 - WO created	Complete work order
		23 - Configuration created	Run Auto-create Work Order program
Demand Interface	14 - Interfaced, 18 - Eligible		
RMA Interface	14 - Interfaced, 16 - Partially Accepted, 17 - Completely Accepted, 18 - Eligible		

Run ontexc07.sql to get a list (ontexc07.lst)of Order Entry Orders and Order Lines that are in cycle states that are not supported. The Cycle History of these orders is not upgraded to Workflow.

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc07.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc07.sql
```

Step 6: Close open pick slips/picking batches or open deliveries/departures (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

For pick slip-based Shipping customers:
Back order or ship confirm all open pick slips and picking batches. Select Shipping > Ship Confirm by Pick List or Shipping > Ship Confirm by Batch.

For delivery-based Shipping customers:
Back order or ship confirm all open deliveries and departures. Select Shipping > Ship Confirm Deliveries or Shipping > Ship Confirm by Departures.

Step 7: Run the Shipping Interface programs (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

You need to run the following programs and ensure that the interface tables are empty. The upgrade does not take interface records into account, so all Order Entry data must be upgraded from the interface tables.

- Update Shipping program (Shipping > Update Shipping)

- Inventory Interface program (Shipping > Interfaces. Enter Inventory Interface in the Name field)

- Receivables Interface program (Shipping > Interfaces. Enter Receivables Interface in the Name field)

Step 8: Review Item Validation Org settings (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

When more than one responsibility is attached to an organization, the responsibilities must have the same item validation org settings to be supported by Order Management. Run ontexc05.sql to produce a listing (ontexc05.lst) of the item validation org settings. Use this list to determine which settings need to be changed. If the valid item validation org is set at the user level, these values will not be upgraded.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc05.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc05.sql
```

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide*

Step 9: Validate inventory organization data (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**
Reference manual: **SQL*Plus User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

The wshpre00.sql script validates the following data for *inventory* organizations:

- All organizations in shipping parameters are defined and valid. They must also have an enabled subinventory.

- All organizations are assigned to locations.

To run this script, type the following:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $WSH_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wshpre00.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %WSH_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wshpre00.sql
```

Review the output file (wshpre00.lst). Shipping parameters records without valid organizations should be purged by your system administrator. Have your application specialist assign a quantity-tracked subinventory to any record that does not have at least one. In addition, the application specialist should define and assign an internal (HR) location for each inventory organization defined in your system that does not already have one.

Step 10: Review cycles that may not be upgraded (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

Order Entry cycles referenced by open orders are upgraded to workflow processes during the Order Management upgrade. Some cycles may not be upgraded successfully due to various reasons:

- the cycle definition is corrupt

- the cycle definition is not supported in Order Entry

- the cycle definition is extremely complex

- there is no exact functional equivalent in Order Management

The pre-upgrade script ontexc08.sql creates a list of cycles (ontexc08.lst) that cannot be upgraded and recommends actions that you may choose to take. If a cycle is not upgraded to Workflow, open orders referencing that cycle *will not* be upgraded. To run ontexc08.sql:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc08.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd $ONT_TOP\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc08.sql
```

Oracle Release Management/Automotive Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**1.**	Create Release Management Spreadsheets (recommended)	Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)

Step 1: Create Release Management Spreadsheets (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Release Management Implementation Manual**	Users must log off: **No**

This upgrade moves Oracle Automotive ∕ Release Management from a partner (3rd-party) solution to an Oracle solution. This means that certain data exists only in the partner product (Radley CARaS) in Release 10.7 and Release 11.0. In order to upgrade from the 3rd-party solution to the Oracle solution automatically, you must use the Release Management Spreadsheets.

> **Note:** If you do not use the spreadsheets, the data is not automatically included in the upgrade, and you must enter it manually using the Release Management Processing Rules form. After entering all input data, import the Input Data worksheet as a comma-delimited text file, with the name setupdata.txt, and store it in the directory specified in the ECE: Inbound File Path profile option.

1. Create Spreadsheet 1

   Create Release Management Processing Rules parameter values for each Trading Partner and their corresponding locations and customer items in the Excel spreadsheet (preupg1.xls). Some values in CARaS may be case-sensitive, so be sure to verify the accuracy of the data you enter.

   > **Note:** Forecasts may be moved either to Oracle Order Management or Oracle Planning.

2. Create Spreadsheet 2

   Create the pre-upgrade spreadsheet for CARaS turnaround data (caras1.xls). Much of the data for completing this spreadsheet is available by running Release Reports in CARaS — for example, Release History or Firm∕Planning Requirements Summary.

   > **Additional Information:** Automotive page, Oracle*MetaLink*; Appendix 1, *Oracle Release Management Implementation Manual*

4

Category 3 — Performing the Upgrade

This chapter describes the pre-upgrade tasks that prepare your Oracle Applications products for an upgrade and describes the actions that are required to start AutoUpgrade, the utility that performs the upgrade processing. We refer to these steps as Category 3 — once you begin to perform them, you cannot use Oracle Applications until after you have successfully completed your upgrade. *All users must be logged off to perform these steps.*

In this chapter, you will perform Category 3 steps for the following products:

Applications Technology Products

In performing the Category 3 steps, you must perform the System Administration tasks immediately before you perform the Database Upgrade Tasks. Therefore, these steps have been moved to the end of this chapter.

Oracle Alert Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	**1.** Drop event alert triggers in custom schemas (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Drop event alert triggers in custom schemas (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Drop all event alert database triggers created in custom schemas. The triggers will be re-created after the upgrade. Run alrdtrig.sql from your new APPL_TOP.

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @alrdtrig.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @alrdtrig.sql
```

The script displays the following message and exits SQL*Plus:

```
"Rerun alrdtrig.sql, which is located in the preupg subdirectory of the admin
directory under APPL_TOP, for each custom schema.  If alrdtrig.sql has been run
for all custom schemas, then open each [schema].sql (created by this script),
which can be found in the current directory, and manually delete the drop
trigger statements which do not belong.  Then run the following statement for
each schema: sqlplus apps_username/password @[schema].sql"
```

You should review the resulting [schema].sql files in your current directory and delete any drop trigger statements that do not belong. Log in to SQL*Plus and run each of the [schema].sql files to drop the triggers in each custom schema.

Oracle Common Modules Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	**1.** Delete all AK data for Production 16 Global Demo databases (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	**2.** Check for invalid AK data in non-Global Demo databases (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**3.**	Fix invalid data in non-Global Demo databases (conditionally required)	Application Specialist

Step 1: Delete all AK data for Production 16 Global Demo databases (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 10SC Production 16**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Data in Production 16 Global Demo databases is not supported in Release 11*i*. To remove all data when upgrading a Global Demo database, run the following script from your new APPL_TOP:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AK username>/<AK password> @akdelp16.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akdelp16.sql
```

Step 2: Check for invalid AK data in non-Global Demo databases (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10SC Production 16.1 (or higher), 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

To upgrade from a non-Global Demo database (Production 16.1 or higher):
Run the following script from your new APPL_TOP:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akchkp16.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akchkp16.sql
```

The script generates akchkp16.rpt, which you will review as a part of the next step.

To upgrade from Release 11.0:
Run the following script from your new APPL_TOP:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akchkr11.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akchkr11.sql
```

The script generates akchkr11.rpt, which you will review as a part of the next step.

Step 3: Fix invalid data in non-Global Demo databases (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10SC Production 16 (or higher), 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

If you are upgrading a non-Global Demo database from Production 16 (or higher):
Review akchkp16.rpt for invalid data. Use the appropriate Oracle Applications forms to correct invalid data before you upgrade to Release 11*i*. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 (from your old APPL_TOP) until there is no invalid data.

If you are upgrading from Release 11.0:
Review akchkr11.rpt for any invalid data. Use the appropriate Oracle Applications forms to correct invalid data before you upgrade to Release 11*i*. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 (from your old APPL_TOP) until there is no invalid data.

Oracle Workflow Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	**1.** Update the protection and customization levels of seeded item types (recommended)	System Administrator / Application Specialist (Workflow)

Step 1: Update the protection and customization levels of seeded item types (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator / Application Specialist (Workflow)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Workflow Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Prior versions of Oracle Workflow included seeded item types. Although the protection level for these item types is set at a level to discourage customizations, you can still change your access level and customize the seeded objects. Such changes, however, may prevent the new seed data in the upgrade from loading properly when you use the Workflow Definitions Loader. Therefore, for every item type currently seeded in your database, you can take one of the following actions:

Action	Result
Do nothing.	Preserves the existing protection and customization levels of seeded objects and guarantees that any customizations made to the seed data (and chose to preserve) are not overwritten.
Run wfprotrst.sql for selected seeded item types to reset the protection and customization levels.	Resets the protection and customization level for the selected item type. The result of this action is that the Release 11*i* upgrade is guaranteed to load. Note that if you run this script, any prior customizations to the seeded item type will be lost, but any new data that you may have added to the item type will be preserved during the upgrade. To run the script, type the following from the new APPL_TOP:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> \
  @wfprotrst <item_type>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> \
  @wfprotrst <item_type>
```

Action	Result
Run wfrmitt.sql for selected seed item types.	Completely deletes the item type and any associated customizations from the database, so that the corresponding seed item type in the Release 11*i* upgrade looks like a new installation. You should consider this option only if you have never used the item type in your production environment. To run the script, type the following from the new APPL_TOP:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wfrmitt
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wfrmitt
```

> **Additional Information:**   Workflow Administration Scripts, *Oracle Workflow Guide;* Oracle Workflow Access Protection and Using the Workflow Definitions Loader sections, *Oracle Workflow Guide.*

To determine your item types, type the following at any prompt:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> select ITEM_TYPE from WF_LOOKUP_TYPES
```

Financials Product Family

The following Category 3 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Financials product family.

Oracle Payables Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**1.**	Update existing payment records (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Payables)
❏	**2.**	Determine exchange rates for new accounting data model (MRC) (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
❏	**3.**	Import and purge Payables Open Interface invoices (required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
❏	**4.**	Import and purge Invoice Import Interface expense reports and invoices (required)	Application Specialist (Payables)

Step 1: Update existing payment records (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0.2 or later**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)**
Reference manual: **No**	User must log off: **No**

If any payments have been entered using Payables 11.0.2, you need to run b1275619.sql on your database to prepare for the upgrade process. This script is included in stand-alone patch 1275619, which is available on Oracle*MetaLink.* To obtain the patch, log in as the apps user.

You do not need to perform this step if you have *never* installed Oracle Applications Release 11.0.2, or if your *first* installation was after 11.0.2.

Step 2: Determine exchange rates for new accounting data model (MRC) (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**
Reference manual: **Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications**	Users must log off: **Yes**

You will need certain exchange rates in Category 5 to upgrade existing AP/MRC data for the new accounting data model. To determine these exchange rates, run apumccur.sql. Running this script has no effect on Receivables, as the script gets Payables exchange rates only for exchange rate fields that did not exist before the upgrade. Run this script for each APPS schema (from the new APPL_TOP). Pay special attention to the instructions in the script. Among other information, they indicate which daily rates combinations *must* be defined.

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apumccur.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apumccur.sql
```

You define the rates from the GL responsibility. Navigate to Setup > Currencies > Rates > Daily. Rerun the script and enter missing rates until the report is clean.

> **Additional Information:**   Entering Daily Rates, *Oracle Applications General Ledger User's Guide*

Step 3: Import and purge Payables Open Interface invoices (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**
Reference manual: **Open Interface Import (Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 11 or 11i)**	User must log off: **No**

Import and purge all invoices that are in the Payables Open Interface tables.

1. As the Payables Manager, choose Invoices > Entry > Open Interface Invoices.

2. Query all invoices and note the name of any that has a null value in the Status field. These invoices need to be imported.

3. To submit the Payables Open Interface Import program, choose Requests > Run. Select Single Request and choose OK. Type *Payables Open Interface Import* in the

Request Name field. Enter each source in the Parameters window, choose Yes for the Purge parameter, and click Submit Request.

4. Each time the import process completes, Payables automatically produces the Payables Open Interface report. Review each report, resolve any outstanding exceptions, and resubmit the import program until you have imported all outstanding invoices.

5. To purge invoice data that has been imported successfully but which remains in the tables. Choose Requests > Run, select Single Request, and choose OK. Type Payables Open Interface Purge in the Request Name field and click Submit Request.

Step 4: Import and purge Invoice Import Interface expense reports and invoices (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**
Reference manual: **Submit Invoice Import, (Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 10.7); Payables Invoice Import Program, (Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 11)**	User must log off this application: **No**

Import and purge all invoice and expense report records that are in the Payables Invoice Import interface tables.

1. Run the following script from your new APPL_TOP to identify invoice and expense report records that you need to import:

   For UNIX users:

   ```
   $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apuinimp.sql
   ```

   For NT users:

   ```
   C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apuinimp.sql
   ```

2. The script produces apuinimp.lst, which lists for each operating unit any sources for which you need to import records and the number of records that need to be imported. If there are no records listed, this step is complete. If there are records listed, you need to import them.

3. In Payables, import the records for each operating unit.

- If you are upgrading from character-mode, navigate to the Submit Invoice Import form in your old APPL_TOP. For each source, submit import and enter today as the purge date.

- If you are upgrading from GUI, choose Other > Requests > Run in your old APPL_TOP to navigate to the Submit Request window. Select Single Request and choose OK. Submit the Payables Invoice Import program. Submit the program for each source, and enter today as the purge date.

4. Each time the import process is complete, Payables automatically produces the Payables Invoice Import Exceptions report. Review each report, resolve any outstanding exceptions, and resubmit the Payables Invoice Import program until you have imported all outstanding records.

5. Purge any remaining records that have been imported successfully but still remain in the tables. Perform these steps from your old APPL_TOP.

- If you are upgrading from character-mode, navigate to the Submit Invoice Import form. Enter the current date as the purge date.

- If you are upgrading from GUI and you submit Payables Invoice Import with a purge date and use a user-defined source, Payables automatically purges all successfully imported records, regardless of source.

Oracle Projects Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	1.	Submit and obtain approval for all timecards entered in PTE or Project Time and Expense (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
❏	2.	Correct excess revenue accrued for negative amount events (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
❏	3.	Back up custom client extension packages and views (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❏	4.	Perform Projects Category 1 and Category 2 Steps again (required)	Application Specialist (Projects)

Step 1: Submit and obtain approval for all timecards entered in PTE or Project Time and Expense (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

You must perform this step if you used Personal Time and Expense (PTE) in Release 10.7 or Project Time and Expense to enter timecard information in Release 11.0.

PTE and Project Time and Expense are no longer supported. Timecard entry is now performed in the Self-Service Time application. Before you run AutoUpgrade, you must submit all timecards that have been entered in your existing application and obtain approval for each one. You will implement Self-Service Time after you run AutoUpgrade. No timecards should be entered after you perform this step until the upgrade is complete.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Personal Time and Expense System Administrator's Guide; Oracle Project Time and Expense User's Guide*

Step 2: Correct excess revenue accrued for negative amount events (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed, and all the following conditions apply: you have not applied patchset D (Release 10.7), you have not upgraded to Release 11.0.2 or later, and you have not applied the stand-alone patch 634580. If you have applied any of these patches, patch sets, or upgrades, do *not* perform this step.

This step pertains to negative amount events accruing overstated revenue amounts during the Generate Draft Revenue process. Projects now generates the correct revenue amounts. Run pa634580.sql from your new APPL_TOP to report existing overstated revenue.

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa634580.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa634580.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number. You can enter a range of projects to reduce processing time. The script produces a report called pa634580.lst, which lists the project and task number, event number, and the event amount for all events where revenue is accrued beyond the soft limit. To correct the

data, create a revenue write-off event for each overstated amount, following these steps from your old APPL_TOP:

1. Choose Billing > Events and select either Project or All to navigate to the Find Project Events window.

2. Query for the project you want to correct.

3. Choose New to display the Event Details window.

4. Enter the Task Number (if you want to create a task level event).

5. Select an Event Type that has an event classification of Write-Off.

6. In the Revenue Amount field, enter the amount listed in pa634580.lst for the project and task.

7. Complete the Event Date, Organization, and Description fields and save your work.

8. Repeat these steps for each overstated amount on the pa634580.lst report.

After you create the required revenue write-off events, run the Generate Draft Revenue process from the Submit Request (Requests > Run) window for each affected project.

> **Additional Information:**   Events, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 3: Back up custom client extension packages and views (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Back up any custom client extension packages and views you have created. You will restore them after you run AutoUpgrade. Run the backup from your old APPL_TOP.

> **Additional Information:**   *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Step 4: Perform Projects Category 1 and Category 2 Steps again (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

You must run the Category 1 steps 2 – 4 and Category 2 steps 1 – 7 for Projects again at this time to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing. See Chapter 2 and Chapter 3 for details.

Oracle Receivables Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	**1.** Drop tax vendor synonyms (conditionally required)	System Administrator / Application Specialist (Receivables)

Step 1: Drop tax vendor synonyms (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **System Administrator / Application Specialist (Receivables)**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

Complete this step if you have ever used a 3rd-party tax vendor, such as Taxware or Vertex. In Release 10.7, synonyms to tax views were required to use this 3rd-party vendors. These views are no longer required and must be dropped for the upgrade to run successfully. Run the following script to drop these synonyms:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $AR_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115vds.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115vds.sql
```

Country-specific Financials Product Family

The following Category 3 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Country-specific Financials product family.

Oracle Common Countries Financials Tasks

Checklist		Perform for this country...
❏	**1.** Partition EFT system formats information by operating unit (conditionally required)	Germany, Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, Switzerland

Step 1: Partition EFT system formats information by operating unit (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Germany, Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, and Switzerland**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**
Performed by: **Database Administrator**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Perform this step only if you are already using Multi-Org functionality.

The JG_ZZ_SYSTEM_FORMATS table was partitioned for Multi-Org (by operating unit) for Release 11.0. When you upgrade from Release 10.7 to Release 11*i*, you must partition the table before the table is converted to MLS.

You must assign your existing data to an appropriate operating unit for it to be accessible. Assigning the data is a two-step process. You must perform both steps for each installation of Oracle Payables.

1. Add the required ORG_ID column to the JG_ZZ_SYSTEM_FORMATS table by running this script:

   For UNIX users:

   ```
   $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
   $ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @jgzzper1.sql
   ```

   For NT users:

   ```
   C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzper1.sql
   ```

2. Partition the existing data by operating unit by running jgzzper2.sql once for every combination of country code and EFT type that exists in the database until each entry is assigned to an operating unit.

   For UNIX users:

   ```
   $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
   $ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @jgzzper2.sql
   ```

   For NT users:

   ```
   C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzper2.sql
   ```

HRMS Product Family

The following Category 3 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the HRMS product family.

Oracle Human Resources Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	**1.** Remove triggers specific to PayMIX (required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Remove triggers specific to PayMIX (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **Release 10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Apply patch 1276902, which executes a script to remove the following PayMIX triggers. PAY_PDT_BATCH_CHECKS_WHO and PAY_PDT_BATCH_HEADERS_ WHO. This is necessary to avoid the possibility of contention between existing scripts in the Release 11*i* upgrade process. You must perform this step now. Removing the triggers before you shut down your system for the upgrade will disable PayMIX processing.

Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family

The following Category 3 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Manufacturing and Distribution product family. Because they are closely related, the tasks for Oracle Inventory, Oracle Cost Management, and Oracle Work in Process are listed under a single heading.

Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks

Checklist		Menu Responsibility>function
❏	**1.** Complete physical inventories in process - INV (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory
❏	**2.** Process all data in temporary and interface tables - INV (required)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory
❏	**3.** Verify that no uncosted transactions exist - Standard and Average Costing (required)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost

Checklist			Menu Responsibility>function
❑	**4.**	Run inventory valuation reports - INV (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost
❑	**5.**	Run WIP Value report- Standard and Average Costing (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost
❑	**6.**	Close all accounting periods - Standard and Average Costing (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost

Step 1: Complete physical inventories in process - INV (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Because you should not perform an upgrade in between business processes, you should complete any physical inventories in process before the upgrade. To do this, enter tag counts and perform adjustments for each unfinished process. Complete this step from your old APPL_TOP.

To display physical inventory tag information:

1. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Inventory function. Navigate to the Physical Inventory Tag Counts window (Counting > Physical Inventory > Tag Counts).

2. Enter the physical inventory.

3. Enter the employee who performed the physical inventory in the Default Counter field. Oracle Inventory uses this value as the default for the Counted By field of each tag.

4. Enter or query the tag number for which to enter counts using one of the following options:

   Choose the Find button. Choose *Yes* or *No* to query all tags. If you choose *No,* you can either enter tag numbers individually or use the Find feature on the Query menu to query a subset of tags.

   Enter tag numbers individually. You can enter existing tags individually. When you enter a tag number the item information for that tag appears.

   Use the Find feature on the Query menu. You can query a subset of tags matching the search criteria you enter in the find window.

To enter counts for default tags:

1. Follow the steps for displaying physical inventory tag information.

2. Enter count information.

3. Save your work.

To enter counts for blank or dynamic tags:

1. Follow the steps for displaying physical inventory tag information, but in the Tag field enter a tag number.

2. Enter the item associated with the tag.

3. Enter the revision of the item. You can enter a value here if the item is under revision quantity control.

4. Enter the subinventory in which you counted the item.

5. Enter the locator associated with the subinventory. You can enter a value here if the item is under locator control.

6. Enter the count quantity (number counted) for the tag.

7. Enter the count unit of measure (UOM).

8. Enter the name of the employee who counted the item (Counted By).

9. Enter the lot number associated with the item. This entry is required if the item is under lot number control.

10. Enter the serial number associated with the item. This entry is required if the item is under serial number control.

11. Save your work.

To approve physical inventory adjustments:

1. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Inventory function. Navigate to the Approve Physical Adjustments Summary window (Counting > Physical Inventory).

2. Enter the name of the physical inventory

3. Enter the name of the employee approving the adjustments.

4. Select an adjustment to approve and check the Approve option. Note: You must either approve or reject all adjustments for a physical inventory before you can process your adjustments.

5. Save your work.

To process physical inventory adjustments:

1. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Inventory function. Navigate to the Physical Inventories Summary folder window.

2. Select the physical inventory you want to use.

3. Choose Launch adjustments from the Tools menu. The Launch Adjustments window appears.

4. Enter the adjustment account number against which adjustments should be charged.

5. Enter the adjustment date.

6. Choose the Launch Adjustments button to submit the concurrent request for adjustments.

> **Additional Information:** Overview of Physical Inventory, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*

Step 2: Process all data in temporary and interface tables - INV (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Before you perform this step, make sure the background processor is running.

1. Navigate to Inventory > Setup > Transactions > Interface Managers.

2. From the Special menu, choose Launch Managers for each manager.

Ensure that you complete all transactions so that no information remains in the temporary (MTL_MATERIAL_TRANSACTIONS_TEMP) table or in the interface tables (MTL_TRANSACTIONS_INTERFACE and MTL_DEMAND_INTERFACE). Run these steps from your old APPL_TOP.

To view pending transactions:

1. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Inventory function. Navigate to the Find Pending Transactions window (Transactions > Pending Transactions).

2. Enter search criteria for the pending transactions you want to view.

3. Choose Find to start the search. The results display in the Pending Transactions window.

4. Select a tabbed region to display a type of information: *Error*, *Location*, *Source*, *Intransit*, or *Other*.

To resubmit transactions to the demand manager for processing:

1. In the Pending Transactions window, select the Submit option next to the transactions you want to resubmit or choose Resubmit All from the Special menu.

2. Save your work.

> **Additional Information:** Overview of Inventory Transactions, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*

Step 3: Verify that no uncosted transactions exist - Standard and Average Costing (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **Release 10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Cost Management)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Cost Management User's Guide, Oracle Inventory User's Guide, and Oracle Work in Process User's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Verifying that all transactions entered are costed ensures consistency as you upgrade to Release 11*i*. To verify that no uncosted transactions exist, you need to check material inventory transactions and WIP pending resource transactions. Perform these steps from your old APPL_TOP. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Cost function. Navigate to View Transactions > MTL Transactions. Then choose the WIP function, and navigate to Pending Resource Transactions

If upgrading from Release 10.7 (character-mode):
See View Transactions, *Oracle Inventory Reference Manual, Release 10,* for more information.

If upgrading from Release 10.7NCA:
See View Pending Transactions, *Oracle Inventory Reference Manual, Release 10SC,* for more information.

Step 4: Run inventory valuation reports - INV (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory)**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

To prepare for installing this release, you need certain validation totals. After you have completed your inventory transactions, run the Elemental Value report, the Subinventory Value report, and if you use intransit, the Intransit Value report. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Cost responsibility under your old APPL_TOP. Navigate to Reports > Value. At a minimum, run these reports sorted by item and by subinventory. In the After Upgrade steps, you will run other inventory valuation reports, and compare your Release 10.7 or Release 11 inventory balances with Release 11*i* balances.

Step 5: Run WIP Value report- Standard and Average Costing (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory or Cost Management)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide and Oracle Cost Management User's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**	

In preparation for an upgrade, you need certain validation totals. After you have completed your inventory and work in process transactions, run the WIP Value report for your latest accounting period. At a minimum, run this report for all jobs and repetitive schedules using the class sort and job/schedule sort. Use your old APPL_TOP.

1. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Cost function. Navigate to Report > Value (WIP Value report).

2. Choose Single Request or a Request Set (the Submit Request window appears).

3. In the Name field, select WIP Value Report (the Parameters window appears).

4. Enter the report parameters and choose OK (returns to the Submit Request window).

5. Choose Submit to run the WIP Value Report.

> **Additional Information:** WIP Value Report, *Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual, Release 10.7 or 11.*

In the upgrade finishing steps, you will run these reports again and compare your Release 10.7 or Release 11.0 with the associated Release 11*i* balances. If you are upgrading from Oracle Work in Process, Release 10.7 10SC, see WIP Value Report in the *Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 10SC.*

Step 6: Close all accounting periods - Standard and Average Costing (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide or Oracle Cost Management User's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**	

Closing open periods is recommended, but not required *except for sets of books that use the Global Accounting Engine*. Closing past periods is highly recommended.

> **Additional Information:**   Close all accounting periods (required), Global Accounting Engine Tasks, Category 2, Step 5.

Closing your accounting period summarizes costs based on transactions. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Cost function. Navigate to Accounting Close Cycle > Inventory Accounting Periods. If you are upgrading from Release 10.7 10SC, see Period Close, *Oracle Cost Management User's Guide, Release 10SC.*

Oracle Order Management Tasks

Checklist		Menu Responsibility>function
❏	**1.** Repeat Category 2 steps 1 – 10 (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping
❏	**2.** Set up utl_file_dir parameter (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping

Step 1: Repeat Category 2 steps 1 – 10 (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

If you have not yet performed the Order Management Category 2 steps, or if you have processed new transactions since you completed the steps, you need to repeat them now so that the data in the interface tables will be ready for the upgrade.

> **Additional Information:**   Oracle Order Management Tasks, Chapter 3.

Step 2: Set up utl_file_dir parameter (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide**	Users must log off: **No**

Ensure that at least one directory with write permissions is specified in the utl_file_dir parameter for the database. To check the parameter, issue this SQL statement:

```
$ select value from v$parameter where name = 'utl_file_dir'
```

> **Note:** The logs for the upgrade script used to generate the defaulting and constraints packages (ontupg50.sql and ontupg51.sql) are written to the first directory specified in this parameter. So, if the utl_file_dir is /sqlcom/log, /sqlcom/out, the log is written to sqlcom/log/DEFAULTING_GENERATOR log and /sqlcom/log/CONSTRAINTS_GENERATOR.log respectively.

Oracle Purchasing Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❑	1. Set MRP profile options (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator
❑	2. Drop ICX index (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Set MRP profile options (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **Release 10.7NCA, 10SC**	Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

When upgrading from Release 10.7, AutoUpgrade replaces AutoSource rules with enhanced sourcing rules and Approved Supplier List (ASL) entries, which offer a more powerful and flexible way of sourcing. AutoUpgrade assigns default profile option values for MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set and MRP:Sourcing Rule Category Set. After you run AutoUpgrade and perform the After the Upgrade

steps, you can modify your newly enhanced sourcing rules and ASL entries to suit your individual business needs.

> **Additional Information:** Automatic Sourcing, *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide*

If upgrading from 10.7 character-mode, omit this step. The profile option MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set gets its assignment set name from the Sourcing Rule/Bill of Distribution Assignments window, which is not available in character-mode. You will set these profile options in a post-upgrade step. If you did not use AutoSource Rules in Release 10.7, you do not have to perform this step.

To provide a value for the profile options:

1. From your old APPL_TOP, navigate to the System Profile Values window in the System Administrator responsibility.

2. Query for MRP: Sourcing Rule Category Set and MRP: Default Sourcing Assignment Set to make sure that values are provided at the Site level.

   Set the profile option MRP:Sourcing Rule Category Set to the name of the default category set used by Purchasing. You can find this category set in the Default Category Sets window. From the Purchasing responsibility, choose Setup > Items > Categories > Default Category Sets. Use the Category set name that appears next to the Purchasing Functional area.

   Set the profile option MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set to the assignment set that is to be used by Purchasing. If you already have a sourcing rule assignment set that you use for Purchasing, choose that assignment set for this profile option value. If you do not have an assignment set, use the Sourcing Rule/Bill of Distribution Assignments window to create one. From the Purchasing responsibility, choose Supply Base > Assign Sourcing Rules. Create an assignment set name and save it. Then choose this assignment set name in the MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set profile option.

   > **Attention:** Purchasing uses just one assignment set — the one indicated in this profile option. Therefore, AutoUpgrade assigns all of your newly created sourcing rules to the assignment set name indicated in this profile option.

Step 2: Drop ICX index (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Perform this step only if you have installed any version of Web Requisitions or Self-Service Purchasing version 4.0 or earlier. Otherwise, omit this step.

Applying patch 1276916 drops the index ICX_POR_CATEGORY_DATA_SRCS_N2 (on the ICX_POR_CATEGORY_DATA_SOURCES table) from the database. AutoUpgrade requires this action to successfully complete the upgrade. You can obtain this patch from Oracle*MetaLink* (http://www.oracle.com/support/).

Oracle Release Management/Automotive Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❑	1.	Stop processing of inbound demand EDI transactions in CARaS (required)	Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)
❑	2.	Ensure that all demand in CARaS has been exported to Oracle Automotive (required)	Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)
❑	3.	Print Status Inquiry report (required)	Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)
❑	4.	Print Demand Status Inquiry report (required)	Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)

Step 1: Stop processing of inbound demand EDI transactions in CARaS (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **Release 10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)**
Reference manual: **CARaS User's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Before you upgrade, the customer inbound demand picture must be frozen and fully processed in Release 11 Oracle Order Entry and Oracle Planning. This requires steps within Radley CARaS and the Oracle Demand Processor to ensure that inbound demand transaction processing has halted and all demand received by CARaS has been fully processed through CARaS and Oracle Demand Processor before the Demand Upgrade process is started.

1. Stop processing of outbound ASN and Invoice EDI transactions in CARaS.

2. Stop CARaS processing for the following inbound EDI demand transaction for all CARaS Trading Partners:

- Planning Schedules (830 or EDIFACT equivalent)

- Shipping Schedules (862 or EDIFACT equivalent)

- Sequenced Production Schedules (866)

3. Note the date and time. All EDI files received after this date and time must be processed in Release 11*i*.

> **Attention:**   All inbound EDI demand transactions received and processed by CARaS after the change to 11*i* must be processed through the e-Commerce Gateway as Release 11*i* standard transactions with Common Control Record Document ID of the interface data file as SPSI, SSSI, or PSQI (not C-SPSI, C-SSSI, or C-PSQI)

Step 2: Ensure that all demand in CARaS has been exported to Oracle Automotive (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)**
Reference manual: **CARaS User's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**
Concurrent Manager required: **Yes**	

Ensure that all demand received by CARaS before the date and time of the change to Release 11*i* has been exported from CARaS. Ensure that all exported demand has been fully processed in Release 11 Demand Processor — the interface table RLA_DEMAND_INTERFACE_ALL should have no unprocessed demand.

> **Note:**   Data from interface tables is not upgraded by this Automotive Upgrade.

Print Release 11.0 Demand Processor Exception Report in Oracle Automotive Release 10.7 or 11.0 and take necessary action to respond to exception messages. From the Automotive responsibility, select Demand Transactions.

Step 3: Print Status Inquiry report (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)**
Reference manual: **CARaS User's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

In Radley CARaS, print Status Inquiry report for each trading partner. If 866 data is not included on this report, identify and create the additional reports needed to view this data. You will compare the data in this report to the Oracle Demand Status Report to make sure all data was exported.

Step 4: Print Demand Status Inquiry report (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Automotive User's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**
Concurrent Manager required: **Yes**	

Print the Demand Status Inquiry Report for all trading partners (866 data is included). From the Automotive responsibility, choose Reports. Manually compare this report with the CARaS Status Inquiry Report to ensure that all demand in CARaS has been exported to Oracle under Release 11.0 and all Release 11.0 Demand Stream Processor exception messages have been recognized.

If the demand on the reports is synchronized, you can proceed with the upgrade. Otherwise, identify the missing demand, export it to Oracle Order Entry/Shipping and Oracle Planning using the Demand Processor and process it. Reprint the Demand Status Inquiry report and evaluate until both systems are synchronized.

Database and System Administration Upgrade Steps

Now that you have run the Category 3 steps for individual products in this release, you should perform steps the following System Administration steps and database upgrade steps to prepare for running AutoUpgrade.

System Administration Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**1.**	Identify potential ORACLE schema conflicts (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❏	**2.**	Enable SYSADMIN user and password (required)	System Administrator

Checklist			Performed by
❑	**3.**	Ensure all concurrent requests are complete (required)	System Administrator
❑	**4.**	Disable AOL Audit Trail feature (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Identify potential ORACLE schema conflicts (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

If you originally installed Oracle Applications with Release 9.3 or earlier, you must ensure that the IDs for existing ORACLE schemas will not conflict with ones necessary for new schemas created by AutoUpgrade. To identify potential conflicts, type the following from the new APPL_TOP:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AOL username>/<AOL password> @adpuver.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adpuver.sql
```

Any ORACLE ID values listed by the script that are not associated with an APPS schema are potential conflicts, and may result in problems during the upgrade.

> **Attention:** If you determine there is a potential conflict, contact Oracle Support.

Step 2: Enable SYSADMIN user and password (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

AutoUpgrade must access the Oracle Application Object Library ORACLE username using the application user SYSADMIN. Ensure that this application user exists and is enabled. SYSADMIN must also have access to the System Administrator responsibility. Be sure the name of this responsibility remains System Administrator and that it connects to the APPS schema for its data group. Password must be set to SYSADMIN.

To verify this information, go to Security > User > Define and query for user name SYSADMIN. Perform the verification from your old APPL_TOP.

Step 3: Ensure all concurrent requests are complete (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Ensure that all concurrent requests have run to completion before you start the upgrade. Cancel pending requests as necessary.

1. Navigate to Concurrent > Requests.

2. In the Find Requests window, select All my requests. Click Find.

> **Additional Information:** Chapter 3, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 4: Disable AOL Audit Trail feature (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**
Requires concurrent manager: **Yes**	

If you are using the AOL Audit Trail feature, you must disable it before running AutoUpgrade. From the System Administrator responsibility under your old APPL_TOP, navigate to Security > Audit Trail > Groups. In the Audit Groups window, set the Group State field to Disable - Prepare for Archive for each audit group defined. Run the Audit Trail Update Tables report from the Submit Requests window (Requests > Run).

If you plan to re-enable auditing after the upgrade, archive and purge the shadow tables now. Data changes made after implementing this step are not audited.

> **Additional Information:** Disabling AuditTrail and Archiving Audit Data, *Oracle Applications System Administration Reference Manual, Release 10* or *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Release 11*

Database Upgrade Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	**1.** Shut down all applications listeners and concurrent managers (required)	Database Administrator
❏	**2.** Migrate or upgrade to Oracle8i Enterprise Edition (required)	Database Administrator
❏	**3.** Set up Net8 (required) - database server	Database Administrator
❏	**4.** Run preparatory scripts - database server (required)	Database Administrator
❏	**5.** Install database objects for the Oracle HTTP server (required)	Database Administrator
❏	**6.** Gather database information (recommended)	Database Administrator
❏	**7.** Check SQL*Plus options (required)	Database Administrator
❏	**8.** Verify rollback segment sizing (required)	Database Administrator
❏	**9.** Turn off automatic archive logging (recommended)	Database Administrator
❏	**10.** Disable custom triggers, constraints, and indexes (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
❏	**11.** Run preparatory scripts – admin server (required)	Database Administrator
❏	**12.** Back up the Oracle Applications database (recommended)	Database Administrator
❏	**13.** Complete upgrade steps for NLS databases (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Shut down all applications listeners and concurrent managers (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

You need to shut down forms listeners, web listeners, and the concurrent managers before you begin the upgrade. Do this from your old APPL_TOP. As System Administrator, choose Administer Concurrent Managers. Navigate to the Control field and select Deactivate.

> **Additional Information:**   *Oracle Applications Installation Update*

Step 2: Migrate or upgrade to Oracle8*i* Enterprise Edition (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle8i Migration**	Users must log off: **Yes**

If you migrated or upgraded your database to Release 8.1.6 in Category 1, you do not have to perform the upgrade or migration again. Simply follow the additional instructions under the appropriate heading in this step.

If you have not yet migrated or upgraded, you must do so now. Follow the instructions under the appropriate heading.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle8i Server Migration; Oracle8i Utilities; Maintaining Oracle Applications*

If you migrated or upgraded to Release 8.1.6 in Category 1:

You need to:

1. Apply the Oracle8*i* Enterprise Edition Release 8.1.6 patch set 1 to bring your database up to the full Release 8.1.6.1 level (if you have not previously done so).

   The patch set is available on Oracle*MetaLink*. Complete instructions are included in the readme file.

2. Set the following init.ora parameters:

   ```
   optimizer_mode = choose
   _sqlexec_progression_cost = 0
   ```

   Set the hash_area_size = 30MB and the parallel_max_servers = MIN (60 or 4 times the number of CPUs).

   The remaining parameters are the same is the ones you set in Database Upgrade Steps, Chapter 2, Step 5. Once you have successfully run AutoUpgrade, you can reset the hash_area_size and parallel_max_servers to the default values.

3. Make sure you set up your tablespaces as described in the Category 2 Database Upgrade Tasks, Step 2.

4. Apply database patch 1253654 to resolve an incorrect results issue for parallel query, which is used in the Payables upgrade. Note that this is a base patch. Refer to this patch number to determine the correct patch for your platform.

If are migrating or upgrading your database to Release 8.1.6.1 now:

You need to:

1. Perform the migration or upgrade using the Oracle8*i* ORACLE_HOME created by Rapid Install. There is no need to apply the Oracle8*i* Enterprise Edition Release 8.1.6 patch set 1 — Rapid Install has done this for you.

2. Set init.ora parameters.

   See Database Upgrade Steps, Chapter 2, Step 5 for the list of init.ora values. Note that because Release 11*i* is run in the cost-based optimizer (CBO) mode, the optimizer_mode parameter must be set to *choose*.

   ```
   optimizer_mode = choose
   _sqlexec_progression_cost = 0
   ```

   Set the hash_area_size = 30MB and the parallel_max_servers = MIN (60 or 4 times the number of CPUs).

   Once you have successfully run AutoUpgrade, you can reset the hash_area_size and parallel_max_servers to the default values. Don't forget to restart your database so that the parameters take effect.

   > **Attention:**   The init.ora parameters you set in Category 1 allowed your system to continue to run in rule-based mode. However, after the upgrade, your system *must* run in CBO mode. For that reason, your optimizer_mode parameter must now be set to *choose*.

3. Identify/create PL/SQL log and out directories. See Database Upgrade Steps, Chapter 2, Step 5.

4. Set up tablespaces (conditionally required). See Database Upgrade Tasks, Chapter 3, Step 2.

5. Apply database patch 1253654 to resolve an incorrect results issue for parallel query, which is used in the Payables upgrade. Note that this is a base patch. Refer to this patch number to determine the correct patch for your platform.

Step 3: Set up Net8 (required) - database server

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Net8 Administrators' Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Follow the instructions in the referenced documents to set up Net8.

> **Additional Information:** Configuring Non-Oracle Database Services: Configuring Net8 for External Procedures, *Oracle Net8 Administrators' Guide; Oracle8i Enterprise Edition Release Notes,*

Step 4: Run preparatory scripts - database server (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

We provide scripts that create objects on the database server that the RDBMS and other technology stack components require. The scripts are located in your APPL_TOP in the admin directory. They must run in an environment that is different from the standard APPL_TOP, so you must copy them to a directory outside of APPL_TOP and reset your environment before you run them.

Each script creates one or more spool files and places them in the directory you ran the scripts from. Make sure you have permission to write to that directory. Check the spool file for errors after you run each script. The following scripts are provided. Run them in the ORACLE_HOME on the database server.

Script	Description
addb816.sql	RDBMS SYS schema setup script. Also installs objects for JAVA and Spatial options.
adsy816.sql	RDBMS SYSTEM schema setup script.
addbctx.sql	Oracle *interMedia* setup script.

Because we provide new versions of addb816.sql and adsys816.sql for each new RDBMS release (for example, addb817.sql and adsys817.sql), we refer to them as addbxxx.sql and adsyxxx.sql in the following instructions.

1. Create an admin subdirectory under the apps directory in the ORACLE_HOME on your database server.

2. Copy addbxxx.sql, adsyxxx.sql, and addbctx.sql to this directory.

3. Set your environment to point to the ORACLE_HOME on your database server. You must access the database server directly. Do not attempt to run any of these scripts by way of Net8.

4. Run addbxxx.sql and adsyxxx.sql from Server Manager:

For UNIX users:

```
$ svrmgrl
SVRMGR> connect / as sysdba
SVRMGR> @addbxxx

$ svrmgrl
SVRMGR> connect <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password>
SVRMGR> @adsyxxx
```

For NT users:

```
C:\apps\admin> svrmgrl
SVRMGR> connect / as sysdba
SVRMGR> @addbxxx

C:\apps\admin> svrmgrl
$ svrmgrl
SVRMGR> connect <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password>
SVRMGR> @adsyxxx
```

5. Run addbctx.sql from SQL*Plus. UNIX users should connect as SYSTEM, and NT users should connect as INTERNAL.

For UNIX users:

```
<SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password @addbctx.sql <Remove ConText> \
<Default Tablespace> <Temporary Tablespace> <Intermedia Shared Library>
```

For NT users:

```
<INTERNAL username>/<INTERNAL password @addbctx.sql <Remove ConText> \
<Default Tablespace> <Temporary Tablespace> <Intermedia Shared Library>
```

The arguments are as follows:

Argument	Description
Remove ConText	TRUE if you are upgrading from an earlier release and need to remove an existing installation of Oracle ConText. Otherwise, FALSE.
Default Tablespace	Default tablespace for the Oracle *inter*Media schema (CTXSYS is recommended). If the CTXSYS tablespace does not exist, you need create it. The size required is 10 MB.

Argument	Description
Temporary Tablespace	Temporary tablespace for the Oracle *inter*Media schema (TEMP is recommended).
interMedia Shared Library	Full path name of the Oracle *interMedia* shared library, which is $ORACLE_HOME/ctx/lib/libctxx8.so on UNIX, and %ORACLE_HOME%\bin\oractxx8.dll on Windows NT.

Note: If you run this script inside SQL*Plus instead of from the SQL*Plus command line, you must enter the full path name for the *interMedia* Shared Library parameter. SQL*Plus does not evaluate the ORACLE_HOME variable when used with a parameter.

Additional Information: *Oracle8i interMedia, Spatial, Time Series, and Visual Information Retrieval Options: Oracle8i Server Migration*

Step 5: Gather database statistics for CBO (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle8i Concepts**	Users must log off: **Yes**

See Database Upgrade Steps, Chapter 2, Step 5 for information about gathering CBO database statistics.

Step 6: Install database objects for the Oracle HTTP server (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual:	Users must log off: **Yes**

We provide a script (admodpls.sql) to create objects required by the Oracle HTTP server on the database server. The script is located in your APPL_TOP in the admin directory.

1. In your iAS ORACLE_HOME, create an apps directory and an admin subdirectory under it.

2. Copy admodpls.sql to apps/admin.

3. Set your environment to point to your iAS ORACLE_HOME. You must access the database server using Net8.

4. Go to apps/admin and run admodpls.sql from SQL*Plus:

For UNIX users:

```
$ sqlplus <SYS username>/<SYS password> @admodpls.sql <SYS password>\
          <Default Tablespace> <Temporary Tablespace> <Connect String>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> sqlplus <SYS username>/<SYS password> @admodpls.sql <SYS password> \
     <Default Tablespace> <Temporary Tablespace> <Connect String>
```

The arguments are as follows:

Argument	Description
SYS password	Password for your SYS schema.
Default Tablespace	Default tablespace for the public web applications schema (OWAPUB). If the OWAPUB tablespace does not exist, you need to create it. The size required is 10 MB.
Temporary Tablespace	Temporary tablespace for the public web applications schema (OWAPUB).
Connect String	The Net8 connect string required to connect to your Oracle Applications database. You must provide a correct value for this argument even if you have LOCAL/TWO_TASK set.

Step 7: Gather database information (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle8i Administrator's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

The adupinfo.sql script generates a file called adupinfo.lst, which contains information pertinent to steps you will perform later in the upgrade. To run adupinfo.lst, from your new APPL_TOP, type:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adupinfo.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adupinfo.sql
```

> **Additional Information:** Other AD Utilities, *Maintaining Oracle Applications*

Step 8: Check SQL*Plus options (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **No**

As part of the Oracle8*i* requirements, you should have set the SQL*Plus PAUSE option OFF and the NEWPAGE option to a value other than 0 (zero). Verify these values in the adutconf output before you run AutoUpgrade.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Applications Installation Update*

Step 9: Verify rollback segment sizing (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle8i Administrator's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Verify that your rollback segments are large enough to handle the upgrade data volume. They should be configured to avoid an ORA-01555 "Snapshot too old" error. The rollback segment sizing information can be found in the adupinfo.lst output. Typically, you should have 1 segment per worker with an extent size of 1 MB and a minimum size of 60 MB.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Applications Installation Update*

Step 10: Turn off automatic archive logging (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle8i Administrator's Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

If Oracle8*i* is set up to automatically archive redo log files, turn off archiving by running adstoplg.sql. This reduces the amount of disk space and shortens the time required by the upgrade. If you need to recover to an earlier point, you can restore the database backup and rerun AutoUpgrade. This is faster than recovering data through archived log files.

1. Copy adstoplg.sql to the admin subdirectory you created in Step 4.

2. Set your environment to point to the ORACLE_HOME on your database server.

3. Go to the admin subdirectory and run the script:

   For UNIX users:

   ```
   $ svrmgrl
   SVRMGR> connect / as sysdba
   SVRMGR> @adstoplg.sql
   ```

   For NT users:

   ```
   C:\apps\admin> svrmgrl
   SVRMGR> connect / as sysdba
   SVRMGR> @adstoplg.sql
   ```

Step 11: Disable custom triggers, constraints, and indexes (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle8i Administrator's Guide, Oracle Applications Concepts**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Disable any custom triggers or constraints on Oracle Applications tables because they may cause the upgrade to fail. You can re-enable these triggers after the upgrade. If you have any custom indexes on Oracle Applications tables, you should determine whether they will impact performance during the upgrade, and drop them if necessary. If you aren't sure, it is best to drop the indexes and add them again after the upgrade if the new release has not created a similar index.

Step 12: Run preparatory scripts – admin server (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Make sure you are in the admin directory under your APPL_TOP before running this script.

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @adsysapp.sql <SYSTEM password>
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adsysapp.sql <SYSTEM password>
```

The script creates a spool file and places it in the directory you ran the script from. Make sure you have permission to write to that directory. Check the spool file for errors after you run each script. Note that the database may contain some invalid packages at this point. This is acceptable, as they will be validated when AutoUpgrade runs.

Step 13: Back up the Oracle Applications database (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle8i Backup and Recovery Guide**	Users must log off: **Yes**

We recommend that you make a file system backup of the Oracle Applications database. If you encounter problems during the upgrade process, you can use this backup to restore the database to its state just before beginning the upgrade.

> **Warning:** Shut down the database with the NORMAL option. You may not be able to restore the database from the backup if you use the IMMEDIATE or ABORT option.

Step 14: Complete upgrade steps for NLS databases (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

If American English is the only active language in your installation, you can omit this step.

If you are upgrading an NLS database (in a base language other than American English), you must apply patch 1457345 (in pre-install mode) to prepare your database for the upgrade. This patch is available in the patch download area on Oracle*MetaLink.* Refer to the readme file for instructions.

Run AutoUpgrade

You have now completed all the tasks necessary to prepare your Oracle Applications products for an upgrade to Release 11*i*. The next step is to run the AutoUpgrade utility (adaimgr) to begin the upgrade. For complete instructions on running this utility, see *Maintaining Oracle Applications*.

Starting and Stopping AutoUpgrade

You can start AutoUpgrade from any directory by typing *adaimgr*. AutoUpgrade displays an introduction screen and asks questions about your upgrade.

> **Note:** We recommend using a window-based terminal so you can open multiple windows to monitor and control more than one process while your upgrade is running.

You can exit from the menus and screens by entering *abort* at any AutoUpgrade prompt. After you exit, you can restart AutoUpgrade from where your last session ended or from the beginning.

> **WARNING: AutoUpgrade begins to upgrade products in the database immediately after the introduction portion of the process. Do not attempt to stop it without first contacting Oracle Support Services.**

> **Attention:** If an error occurs while upgrading the database, you can correct the error without stopping AutoUpgrade.

Restarting AutoUpgrade

If you logged out of the applmgr account after you stopped AutoUpgrade, be sure that your environment is set up properly before you restart AutoUpgrade. Do this by logging back in to applmgr and resetting your environment.

Restart AutoUpgrade by re-issuing the adaimgr command. At the prompt for the name of the log file, specify the file from the previous session or supply a new filename. When you reuse a log file, AutoUpgrade adds the message "Start of AutoUpgrade Session" to the end of the log file and appends messages from the new session as it generates them.

AutoUpgrade then asks if you want to continue with your previous session or start a new one.

Continue Session

Continuing the previous session is the default. When you choose to continue, AutoUpgrade determines where your last session stopped and restarts at that point. It retains all configuration information you entered during your last session.

> **Attention:** If the machine failed while AutoUpgrade was running the upgrade, the restart files may have been corrupted. Contact Oracle Support if you encounter discrepancies when restarting.

Start New Session

AutoUpgrade asks you to confirm a choice not to complete the previous session. It then restarts from the beginning. This resets the configuration screens, so you will have to reenter any previous configuration information that you want to retain.

> **WARNING:** Do not restart AutoUpgrade from the beginning if it began to upgrade products in the database and then stopped. If this happens, determine the cause, correct the problem, and restart the previous session. You can also restore the last saved database and file system and start the process from the beginning.

5

Category 4 — Before Using Oracle Applications

This chapter describes the upgrade finishing steps (also known as post-upgrade steps) that must be run after you have run AutoUpgrade and before you begin to use your Oracle Applications system or products. We refer to these steps as Category 4 — they affect the entire Oracle Applications system. *When you perform these steps. all users must be logged off the system. Users should not attempt to use any Oracle Applications product until these steps are complete. Check the Oracle Applications Release Notes for a complete list of patches.*

> **Note:** When you perform upgrade finishing steps for multiple databases that share the same admin file system, you can run each from $APPL_TOP/admin/out so the output does not overwrite others. NT users run the steps from %APPL_TOP%\admin\out.

In this chapter, you will perform Category 4 steps:

Database Upgrade Tasks 5-2	Oracle Financials Common Country Features Tasks 5-31
Multiple Reporting Currencies Tasks 5-11	Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks 5-30
System Administration Tasks 5-13	Oracle FlexBuilder/Account Generator Tasks 5-26
Oracle e-Commerce Gateway Tasks 5-32	Oracle Workflow Tasks 5-29

Update Database to Current Applications Release Level

Before you continue with the steps in this chapter, you must apply a database patch to bring your database up to the current Oracle Applications release level. There is no copy driver or generation driver. You need only run the database driver (dbupg11i.drv), which is located in the APPL_TOP, from the administration server. The patch may take 11 – 19 hours, depending on your configuration.

> **Warning:**   Do not attempt to run your Oracle Applications without applying the dbupg11i.drv database driver. It must be run immediately after the completion of AutoUpgrade

Additional Information: AutoPatch, *Maintaining Oracle Applications*

Install Online Help

Instructions for installing online help are located in the Finishing your Upgrade chapter of this book. However, you may want to install online help now so that you can reference it for the remaining upgrade steps. For instructions, see Step 2, in Chapter 8. Before you make the decision about when to install help, you should note that it may take a considerable amount of time to complete this process.

Database Upgrade Steps

Because they affect all Oracle applications, you must perform the steps for the Database Upgrade before you perform Application Technology or product-specific steps.

Database Upgrade Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❑	**1.**	Install NLS translated software (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
❑	**2.**	Gather database statistics for CBO (required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
❑	**3.**	Reset ORACLE schema passwords (recommended)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
❑	**4.**	Update configuration-related profiles (required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator

Checklist			Performed by
❏	5.	Run Rapid Install to configure and start server processes (required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
❏	6.	Reapply product customizations to environment and files (conditionally required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
❏	7.	Set rollback segments for normal use (required)	Database Administrator
❏	8.	Install XML Parser for PL/SQL (required)	Database Administrator
❏	9.	Load Java AQ libraries (required)	Database Administrator
❏	10.	Validate and compile APPS schema(s) (recommended)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
❏	11.	Integrate custom objects and schemas (conditionally required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
❏	12.	Re-enable custom triggers, constraints, and indexes (conditionally required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
❏	13.	Back up Oracle Applications (recommended)	Database Administrator / System Administrator

Step 1: Install NLS translated software (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0 with a Non-American English base language**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Requires concurrent manager: **No**

If American English is the only active language in your installation, you can omit this step.

You must complete the installation for your base language prior to logging on to Oracle Applications. If your base language is American English, AutoUpgrade completes the language installation. If your base language is *not* American English, you must complete the steps for installing translated software now. The steps are described in Chapter 6, *Installing Oracle Applications*.

Step 2: Gather database statistics for CBO (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Requires concurrent manager: **No**

Once you have applied the patch, run the Gather Schema Statistics concurrent program (System Administration > Submit Request) to gather database statistics. If the schema name is ALL, then all Apps-specific schema (having an entry in the FND_PRODUCT_INSTALLATIONS table) statistics are gathered. In addition to gathering index and table-level statistics, the procedure also gathers column-level histogram statistics for all the columns listed in the FND_HISTOGRAM_COLS table. *This program is potentially long-running.*

Because it is important to have an up-to-date set, you should gather database statistics periodically to make sure your database queries are optimized.

> **Additional Information:** Cost-based Optimization in Oracle Applications, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*; Cost-based Optimization, *Oracle Applications Concepts*; The Optimizer, *Oracle8i Concepts*

Step 3: Reset ORACLE schema passwords (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Requires concurrent manager: **No**

During the upgrade, Rapid Install preserves the passwords that you set previously for your existing products. However, as it creates the new schema for each *new* product installed, it sets up a default password derived from the product short name. To maintain product security, you should reset these default passwords now. Change the passwords using the Responsibilities window in Oracle Applications.

> **Additional Information:** *Maintaining Oracle Applications*

Step 4: Update configuration-related profiles (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Requires concurrent manager: **No**

When you upgrade an Oracle Applications instance, Rapid Install creates a script that updates configuration-related profiles in your database, but does not run it for you. Run adupdprf.sql from your primary forms server node (the forms server node on which the primary Forms Metrics server runs). For example:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin
```

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adupdprf.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adupdprf.sql
```

Step 5: Run Rapid Install to configure and start server processes (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Installing Oracle Applications**	Requires concurrent manager: **No**

Use the Rapid Install wizard to run Rapid Install again to configure and start your server processes. On the initial Rapid Install screen, choose to configure the existing Applications instance, and follow the instructions in the Upgrading your Applications chapter of *Installing Oracle Applications.*

> **Note:**   You must have your database and Net8 listener started and running before you perform this step.

Rapid Install creates server process control scripts and starts all the server processes, including the concurrent managers. Verify that the processes are started before you continue. For information about the scripts and starting them manually, refer to the Review Server Process Control Scripts section in Chapter **8** of this book.

> ***Additional Information:***   *Maintaining Oracle Applications*

Step 6: Reapply product customizations to environment and files (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual need: **No**	

If your site has product customizations (for forms, reports, programs, or libraries), you may need to reapply changes. You must always test that they work with the new release.

Customizations not stored in the standard Oracle Applications directory structure are not affected by the upgrade. If your product customizations were previously stored in the standard Oracle Applications directory structure, you must reintegrate them using a custom application directory structure to isolate your changes and

make applying upgrades and patches easier. You may need to retrieve your customizations from the backup you made before the upgrade.

Some of your customizations may no longer work correctly or may no longer be necessary. If the version of the Oracle Applications file you customized has not changed, you need do nothing extra. Depending on the nature of the changes, you can copy the new version of the Oracle Applications files to your custom application directory and then reapply your customizations. You should test all of your customizations thoroughly after you reapply them.

If you made customizations to any of the Applications environment files in the past (APPLSYS.env, fndenv, or devenv), you should re-integrate these into the adovars.env file, located in the admin directory under your APPL_TOP. Customizations to these files include custom application basepath variables.

In addition, all custom seed data must be registered under a custom application, not an Oracle Applications product. For example, a custom report should be owned by Custom AP, not Oracle Payables. This ensures your custom seed data is not deleted or modified on upgrade.

Step 7: Set rollback segments for normal use (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle8i Java Stored Procedures Developer's Guide**	

Set your rollback segments for normal operation. Typically, this is 1 for each 25 users, plus 1 for each concurrent manager. The extent size should be 1 MB and the minimum size 60 MB.

Step 8: Install XML Parser for PL/SQL (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle8i Java Stored Procedures Developer's Guide**	

You need to install two stand-alone utilities in your database: XML Parser for PL/SQL (plxmlparserV1_0_1.zip) and XML SQL Utility (Xsul2.zip). Complete this step from the ORACLE_HOME on the database server.

1. Create an admin subdirectory under the appsutil directory in the ORACLE_HOME on your database server (this directory may already exist).

2. Copy plxmlparserV1_0_1.zip and Xsul2.zip from the utils directory in the Common area to the appsutil/admin directory, and unzip them. The

plxmlparserV1_0_.zip file creates several subdirectories in the current location. The Xsul2.zip file creates a single subdirectory (OracleXSU12), and places everything under that directory.

3. Set your environment to point to the ORACLE_HOME on your database server. Do *not* use Net8 to connect to the database. To verify that you have not connected using Net8, make sure the TWO_TASK variable is *not* set, and that the ORACLE_SID variable points to your Applications database.

4. Follow the installation instructions in the readme file for each product (lib/README for the XML Parser for PL/SQL, and OracleXSU12/doc/relnotes.html for the XML SQL Utility). Install all packages in the APPS schema (or all APPS schemas, if you have more than one).

5. Take note of the following clarifications to the installation instructions in the readme files.

XML Parser for PL/SQL (UNIX users only)

To run load java, use the following format:

```
$loadjava –user<APPS username>/<APPS password> –r –v <filename>.jar
```

To run SQL*Plus, use the following format:

```
$sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @<filename>.sql
```

XML Parser for PL/SQL (NT users only)

To run load java, use the following format:

```
C:\>loadjava –user<APPS username>/<APPS password> –r –v \ <filename>.jar
```

To run SQL*Plus, use the following format:

```
C:\>sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @<filename>.sql
```

XML SQL Utility

The default user and password in the oraclexmlsqlload.xxx script must be changed to <APPS username>/<APPS password> before you run the utility

> **Note:** Be sure the Unpzip program is in your PATH. If it is not, we have provided a copy for most operating systems in the unzip subdirectory under the utils directory in the Common area of your file system.

Step 9: Load Java AQ libraries (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle8i Java Stored Procedures Developer's Guide**

Use the loadjava utility to load jmscommon.zip and aqapi.zip into your database. You must load these files in the order listed in this step.

For UNIX users:
Log in as the oracle user and make sure your ORACLE_HOME refers to an 8.1.6 Oracle home. Then, type these commands:

```
$ cd <location of your FND_TOP>/java/3rdparty/stdalone
$ loadjava –user <APPS username>/<APPS password> –resolve jmscommon.zip
$ loadjava –user <APPS username>/<APPS password> –resolve aqapi.zip
```

> **Note:** You must give the explicit path for your FND_TOP, since the environment variable will not be defined when you are logged in as the oracle user.

For NT users:
Make sure your ORACLE_HOME refers to an 8.1.6 Oracle home. Then, type these commands:

```
C:\> cd <location of your FND_TOP>/java/3rdparty/stdalone
C:\> loadjava –user <APPS username>/<APPS password> –resolve jmscommon.zip
C:\> loadjava –user <APPS username>/<APPS password> –resolve aqapi.zip
```

> **Additional Information:** Using Loadjava, *Oracle8i Java Stored Procedures Developer's Guide*

Step 10: Validate and compile APPS schema(s) (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Maintaining Oracle Applications**

The <APPS schema name>.lst report checks for potential problems in your APPS schema(s). It is located in the $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out directory, where

<dbname> is the name of the database you run the script against. NT users will find this report in %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out.

> **Note:** MRC users are *required* to perform this step and correct all problems. See Multiple Reporting Currencies Tasks in this chapter.

To validate APPS schema(s):
From the Maintain Applications Database Objects menu in AD Administration, select the Validate APPS Schema(s) option. Check the report output and correct all problems. Rerun this step until there are no more problems listed.

To compile APPS schema(s):
From the Maintain Applications Database Objects menu in AD Administration, select the Compile APPS Schema(s) option to compile all the invalid objects in your APPS schema.

> **Additional Information:** AD Administration, *Maintaining Oracle Applications*

Step 11: Integrate custom objects and schemas (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**	

If you are upgrading from a previous release and have custom objects or custom schemas that need to be tightly integrated with Oracle Applications, follow the steps in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide* to re-integrate these customizations with the APPS schema.

If you have custom database objects, you should follow certain naming standards so your custom object names will not conflict with Oracle Applications.

> **Warning:** When naming database objects, use at least four characters for your product short name, followed by an underscore. You must use only letters, digits, and underscores when naming database objects. For example, you might define your custom application to use the short name CUST, and database objects to begin with a CUST_ prefix.

Additional Information: Naming Standards, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Step 12: Re-enable custom triggers, constraints, and indexes (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Oracle8i Administrator's Guide**	

An upgrade may modify data your custom triggers or constraints would have processed. Since you disabled these triggers and constraints to ensure the upgrade proceeded correctly, you need to identify any data updates that must occur before you re-enable your custom triggers.

If you dropped any custom indexes before the upgrade, review the new data model to determine if the index is still necessary before redefining it.

Step 13: Back up Oracle Applications (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle8i Backup and Recovery Guide, Oracle Applications Concepts**	

Your system administrator should back up the Oracle Applications product files. On a server or stand-alone machine, your database administrator should also back up the Oracle Applications database.

Upgrading Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC)

The following steps are generic for MRC and so must be performed to implement this feature across the products that use it. The steps assume an upgrade from Oracle Applications Release 11.0. If you are upgrading from Release 10.7 and want to activate MRC in Release 11*i,* follow the steps in *Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications* to install MRC after you complete your upgrade to Release 11*i.*

> **Note:** The Vision Demo database has MRC enabled, but the production and test databases do not. See *Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications* for more information.

Multiple Reporting Currencies Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**1.**	Validate and compile APPS schema(s) (required)	Database Administrator
❏	**2.**	Maintain MRC schema(s) (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
❏	**3.**	Verify your MRC installation (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Validate and compile APPS schema(s) (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Maintaining Oracle Applications**	

If you have not already performed this step as a part of your database upgrade, you must do so now. For instructions, see Database Upgrade Tasks Step 10 in this chapter.

> **Important:**   *This is the most important step in the MRC upgrade process.* You must correct all problems in the report and log files in both parts of this step before continuing. Failure to correct all problems will result in an incomplete or unusable MRC installation.

Step 2: Maintain MRC schema(s) (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Maintaining Oracle Applications**	

1. From the Maintain Applications Database Objects menu in adadmin, select the Maintain Multiple Reporting Currencies Schema(s) option. Choosing this option ensures that your MRC schema is consistent with the changes to your APPS schema and compiles the objects in the APPS_MRC schema.

2. Run these optional steps:

```
Update MRC schema itself (MRC schema objects are always updated)[No]? Yes
Compile invalid objects after updating MRC schema objects [No]? Yes
Recreate MRC triggers in the APPS schema(s) [No]? Yes
```

This option produces a report called adadmin.log in the $APPL_ TOP/admin/<dbname>/out directory, where <dbname> is the name of the

database against which adadmin is running. NT users will find this report in %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out. Check the report output and correct all problems. Rerun this report as you make changes until there are no more problems listed.

3. Re-run the Maintain Multiple Reporting Currencies Schema(s) option as you make changes in adadmin in the future. For example, if a patch changes schema objects, you must run this option after you apply the patch to ensure that your MRC schema is consistent with changes to your APPS schema.

Step 3: Verify your MRC installation (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Maintaining Oracle Applications**	

To verify the success of your MRC installation, you must run the *advrfmrc.sql* script. Running advrfmrc.sql tells you how to correct errors in your MRC schema. This script:

- Verifies that for every package in APPS schema(s), there is an equivalent package or synonym in APPS_MRC schema(s).

- Verifies that there are no functions or packages missing in the APPS_MRC schema(s).

- Verifies that there are no database triggers in APPS_MRC schema(s), and all required MRC triggers are present in the APPS schema.

- Verifies that the MRC data group(s) is defined.

- Tells you how to correct errors in your APPS_MRC schema(s).

To run advrfmrc.sql for each APPS schema, APPS_MRC schema combination, type:

For UNIX users:
```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$AD_TOP/admin/sql/advrfmrc.sql
<First APPS schema name> <APPS schema name> <APPS_MRC schema name>
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%AD_TOP%\admin\sql\advrfmrc.sql
<First APPS schema name> <APPS schema name> <APPS_MRC schema name>
```

> **Note:** The <First APPS schema name> and <APPS schema name> values are the same when you are verifying the first APPS schema.

Applications Technology Products

Because they affect all Oracle applications, you will begin with the upgrade steps for System Administration and Application Object Library.

System Administration Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	1.	Fix flexfields cross-validation rules (required)	Technical Specialist
❏	2.	Set profile options (required)	System Administrator
❏	3.	Clone Date and DateTime value sets (required)	Technical Specialist
❏	4.	Upgrade flexfield date and number data (required)	Technical Specialist
❏	5.	Set up custom data groups (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	6.	Set up electronic mail for use by concurrent managers (required)	System Administrator
❏	7.	Reconnect spawned concurrent programs (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❏	8.	Re-create/validate custom menus (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	9.	Verify installation group numbers for custom IDs (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	10.	Update/verify custom responsibilities (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	11.	Copy and re-customize previously modified scripts or reports (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❏	12.	Regenerate CUSTOM library customizations (recommended)	System Administrator
❏	13.	Define custom concurrent managers startup parameters (required)	System Administrator
❏	14.	Restrict access to concurrent processing servers (required)	System Administrator
❏	15.	Load attachment files into database (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Fix flexfields cross-validation rules (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	

In prior releases, cross-validation rules without lines were ignored. Now, they are considered violated because they include no range of combinations. Run affixcvr.sql to identify flexfield cross-validation rules that have no lines:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $FND_TOP/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @affixcvr.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %FND_TOP%\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @affixcvr.sql
```

To disable or delete key flexfield cross-validation rules without lines, as the System Administrator, navigate to Applications > Flexfield > Key > Cross Validation. Run affixcvr.sql again to ensure the consistency of cross-validation rule data.

Step 2: Set profile options (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Product-specific implementation manuals, Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**	

For instructions about setting profile options and a list of the ones you need to set, refer to your product-specific implementation documentation and Oracle*MetaLink*.

> **Additional Information:**   Profile Options in Oracle Application Object Library, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 3: Clone Date and DateTime value sets (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	

If any flexfield segments or report parameters use value sets of format type Date or DateTime, convert them to use value sets of format type Standard Date and

Standard DateTime either by using the interactive script afffupg1.sql or the Flexfield and Report Parameter setup forms.

Running afffupg1.sql allows you to clone Date value sets of size 9 or 11 characters to Standard Date value sets of size 11. DateTime value sets of any size are cloned as Standard DateTime value sets of length 20. You can use this script to upgrade flexfield segments that use the old Date/DateTime value sets to use the new Standard Date/DateTime value sets. Attributes of the value set, such as independent and dependent values or hierarchy information, are not copied to the new value set. To run afffupg1.sql, type:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $FND_TOP/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afffupg1.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %FND_TOP%\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afffupg1.sql
```

From the interactive menu, choose to list report parameters or flexfields (descriptive or key) that use Date or DateTime value sets (options 1 - 3). Then, choose option 4 if you want to clone the existing value sets. Finally, choose to upgrade the report parameters or flexfields (options 5 - 7). Do not use option 8 for this step.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

Step 4: Upgrade flexfield date and number data (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	

In Release 11*i*, date and number data can be displayed in multiple formats. To support this feature, all date and number data is stored in a canonical form. You must upgrade the transaction data in your date and number value sets to reflect this canonical form using the FNDFFUPG utility.

You upgrade the transaction data stored in flexfield segments using Standard Date/DateTime value sets to use canonical date format (RRRR/MM/DD HH24:MI:SS). Upgrade all transaction number data validated by Number/Char-Number Only value sets to canonical format "." (dot) as the decimal separator; no group separators. Your numbers and dates will appear in the appropriate display format at runtime.

Date and Number related transaction data should be upgraded using the FNDFFUPG concurrent program. Note that this program does not stop if it encounters an error, so it is important to read the log file and search for the occurrences of the word *ERROR*. All error cases will be reported in the log file.

To run this program from the command line:

```
FNDFFUPG <Username/Password> 0 Y <MODE> [MODEPARAMETERS]
<MODE> : Upgrade Utility Mode
```

Valid modes are: DATEONE, DATEALL, NUMBERONE, NUMBERALL. The mode setting allows you to either upgrade single standard date or number value sets, or to upgrade all standard date or number value sets. For more information about modes and mode specific parameters, type

```
FNDFFUPG <Username/Password> 0 Y <MODE>
```

To upgrade all flexfield number data to canonical format for a given range of value sets, the syntax is:

```
FNDFFUPG <Username/Password> 0 Y NUMBERALL <First Value set> <Last value set>
[<SESSION_MODE> [<NLS_NUMERIC_CHARACTERS>]]
```

The following example, the first line upgrades all number value sets that start with letter "A" or "a," and the second upgrades all number value sets (which might take a long time). In both examples, the numeric characters "." are specified. Always specify the numeric characters your site uses for the radix character and the thousands separator in the NLS_NUMERIC_CHARACTERS parameter.

```
FNDFFUPG <APPS username>/<APPS password>@<db name> 0 Y NUMBERALL 'A' 'B' '.,'
FNDFFUPG <APPS username>/<APPS password>@<db name> 0 Y NUMBERALL '' '' 'customer_data'
'.,'
```

To upgrade all flexfield standard date data to canonical format for a given range of value sets, the syntax is:

```
FNDFFUPG <Username/Password> 0 Y DATEALL <First Value set> <Last value set>\
[<SESSION_MODE>]
```

In the following example, the first line upgrades all standard date or date-time value sets that start with the letter A or "a," and the second upgrades all standard date or standard date-time value sets (which might take a long time):

```
FNDFFUPG <APPS username>/<APPS password>@<db name> 0 Y DATEALL 'A' 'B'
FNDFFUPG <APPS username>/<APPS password>@<db name> 0 Y DATEALL '' ''
```

Because upgrading your value sets may take a long time, we recommend dividing the upgrade into several sections. For example:

```
FNDFFUPG <APPS username>/<APPS password>@<db name> 0 Y DATEALL '' 'E'
FNDFFUPG <APPS username>/<APPS password>@<db name> 0 Y DATEALL 'E' 'N'
FNDFFUPG <APPS username>/<APPS password>@<db name> 0 Y DATEALL 'N' ''
```

Additional Information: *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

Step 5: Set up custom data groups (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Custom data groups**

If you wish to use cross-application reporting with Standard Report Submission, you must add any custom applications to data groups. Copy the appropriate data group created by the installation and then add your custom application. Assign the new copied and modified data group to a responsibility. With data groups you can specify which ORACLE ID (schema) your reports should run in.

Step 6: Set up electronic mail for use by concurrent managers (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Custom Concurrent Processing**

The concurrent managers send mail to the applmgr user if the Internal concurrent manager stops running. You need to make sure electronic mail for the applmgr user has been set up. The log file for the Internal concurrent manager shows an error if mail is not set up correctly.

Step 7: Reconnect spawned concurrent programs (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **Oracle Object Application Library Technical Reference Manual**	Do before anyone uses: **Custom Concurrent Processing**

If you have developed concurrent programs that use the Host execution method, you must reconnect the programs to the concurrent manager interface. First, change your working directory to the directory that contains your concurrent program executable. Then copy and reconnect your concurrent program as follows:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $<PROD>_TOP/bin
$ ln -s $FND_TOP/bin/fndcpesr <program>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %<PROD>_TOP%\bin
C:\> copy %FND_TOP%\bin\fndcpesr.exe <program>.exe
```

Parameter descriptions are as follows:

<PROD>   Your custom application product short name.

<program>   The name you used to define your concurrent program executable in Oracle Applications without any filename extension.

Perform this step for all concurrent programs you developed and registered with the Host execution method.

> **Additional Information:**   Implementing Concurrent Processing and Concurrent Processing and Product Customizations Standards, *Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual*

Step 8: Re-create/validate custom menus (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**	

The upgrade process automatically changes standard SmartClient and NCA menus to refer to a replacement object in any place where there was a reference to an obsolete object in the new release. Release 10.7 character-mode menus must be recreated from scratch using a menu report, a responsibility report, and the Users of a Responsibility report that you ran before the upgrade. See System Administration Category 1, Step 4 for more information.

Use FNDSLOAD to restore custom menu definitions you preserved during the pre-upgrade steps from a text file to the database. For example:

```
FNDSLOAD <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y LOCAL <myfile> INSERT
```

where <myfile> is the text filename. This operation is insert-only and will not update records already present in the database.

> **Additional Information:**   Function Security Loader, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Verify your custom menu structures and make sure that they point to correct form names and that the forms still exist.

> **Additional Information:** Defining a New Menu, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 9: Verify installation group numbers for custom IDs (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**	

Ensure that the Installation Group number is set correctly for custom ORACLE IDs.

1. As System Administrator, navigate to Security > ORACLE > Register.

2. Query your custom ORACLE IDs.

3. Set the value of the Installation Group appropriately.

> **Additional Information:** Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide

Step 10: Update/verify custom responsibilities (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7SC, 10.7NCA**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Custom Responsibilities**

If you created a custom responsibility, you must verify that it uses the correct menu after the upgrade. From the System Administrator responsibility, navigate to Security > Responsibilities. Query every custom responsibility. Update as necessary.

Step 11: Copy and re-customize previously modified scripts or reports (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Developer's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Custom Concurrent Processing**

If you have customized any shell scripts or reports that are part of Oracle Applications, copy them to your custom application directories and re-customize the copy as necessary.

> **Additional Information:**   Product Customization Standards, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Step 12: Regenerate CUSTOM library customizations (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Developer's Guide**

This step requires the CUSTOM library customizations that you backed up in Category 1.

1. Verify that the customizations in your CUSTOM library are still valid for the new version of Oracle Applications.

2. Regenerate your CUSTOM library (in the new environment) and place your library .plx file in the $AU_TOP/resource directory. For NT users, this directory is %AU_TOP%\resource.

Step 13: Define custom concurrent managers startup parameters (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administration Guide**

For UNIX users:
The parameters you pass to the concurrent manager startup script, startmgr, affect concurrent manager operation. Before you run the script, determine the best method to set startup parameter values. You can set these values through any combination of these methods:

■   Set values in the startmgr script.

■   Enter values on the command line when you run startmgr.

■   Pass values to concurrent managers through your environment.

■   Define no values and accept the defaults.

These methods are listed in the order in which they apply. That is, parameter values set in startmgr override any other values, and command line values override environment and default values, and so on.

If you define custom startup parameter values, you must restart your concurrent managers for your changes to take effect. If you use parallel concurrent processing, you should set your startup parameter values in the startmgr script. Be sure that you use the same startmgr script on all concurrent processing servers.

When the Internal concurrent manager migrates to a new server, it cannot pass any options entered from the command line. Since the Internal concurrent manager migrates to its primary server after it starts, parameters set when you run startmgr from any other server are lost.

> **Additional Information:**   Managing Concurrent Managers, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

> **Suggestion:**   Do not set a default value for the sysmgr parameter. This keeps the Oracle Application Object Library password from displaying in the script. You will be prompted for the password when you start the managers.

Setting startup parameter values in the startmgr script. Setting startup parameter values in the startmgr script ensures that the managers always start up with the same values. This is not a flexible way to set parameter values, however, because you must edit the script to change the values, values apply to all product groups, and the upgrade overwrites the startmgr script.

To edit the startmgr script, UNIX users move to $FND_TOP/bin. Display the startmgr script with any file editor and find the following line:

```
eval $@ batchmgr
```

Set startup values by adding the parameters and their values between $@ and batchmgr. Here is an example:

```
eval $@ mailto=jsmith sleep=30 batchmgr
```

Setting startup parameter values through your environment To set parameter values through your environment, create a Bourne shell script that defines any number of parameters in this format:

```
<parameter name>=<parameter value>; export <parameter name>
```

If you have multiple product groups, create a different script for each group. Here is an example of a Bourne shell script that exports startup parameters and then calls the startmgr script:

```
# This file sets startup parameters for Oracle Applications
# concurrent managers in 'apps' database.
sleep=30;export sleep
mailto=jsmith; export mailto
. $FND_TOP/bin/startmgr
```

With this type of script, the managers inherit the defined parameter values unless different values are set in startmgr. If the script calls startmgr, you cannot enter startup values on the command line. Therefore, ensure that all necessary parameters are defined in the script or in startmgr.

> **Note:** AutoUpgrade creates a new version of the startmgr script when you upgrade. If you have previously defined custom parameters, you must add to the newly created script any customizations you made to startmgr since the last release.

For NT users:
The parameters you set in the environment — from the Control Panel's System applet — or in your product group's registry subkey affect concurrent manager operation. Before you start the Concurrent Manager Service, determine the best method to set startup parameter values. You can set these values through any combination of these methods:

- Pass values to the concurrent managers from the Control Panel's System applet

- Pass values to concurrent managers through the registry

- Define no values and accept the defaults.

These methods are listed in the order in which they apply. That is, parameter values set in the environment override values in the registry, and registry values override default values.

Setting startup parameter values in the environment To set the startup parameter values from the Windows NT Control Panel System applet, log in to the account from which you create the concurrent manager. Open the Control Panel Folder in My Computer. Double-click the System icon and choose the Environment tab. In the Variable and Value fields, enter the startup parameter name and value, respectively, and click Set to save the value. Once you have finished adding startup parameters, close the System applet and Control Panel.

Setting startup parameter values in the registry To set parameter values in your product group's registry subkey, start the Windows NT registry editor (regedt32.exe). Your

product group's registry subkey is located under HKEY_LOCAL_ MACHINE\SOFTWARE\ORACLE\APPLICATONS\11.0.0. If you have multiple product groups, you will need to edit each product group's subkey.

Step 14: Restrict access to concurrent processing servers (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**	

Log and output files are viewed on the desktop client through Report Review Agent and the Web Report Review tool. So, it is not necessary for users to have direct access to the concurrent processing servers to view these files.

To ensure security of Oracle Applications log and output files, you should limit user access to the concurrent processing servers. If users must have direct access to the concurrent processing servers for other reasons, follow the steps in this section to restrict access to the Applications log and output directories.

Create a UNIX Edition group for directory users The system administrator should create a UNIX Edition group consisting of applmgr and the users who need access to the directory. For example, they might create the group *glusers* for all users of Oracle General Ledger. Groups are defined in the group file of the *etc* directory.

Change directory file protection From the applmgr account, change the file protection of a directory so that it has no global privileges:

```
$ chmod 770 <directory>
```

In the following example, the *r* and *x* shown in the system response indicate that there are global read and execute privileges for the directory:

```
$ cd $GL_TOP
$ ls -ldg out
drwxrwxr-x  2 applmgr  misappl   29423   Jan 12 10:27 out/
       ^ ^
```

After the directory privilege is changed, the system response lists three dashes for global privileges, indicating that all global privileges have been revoked:

```
$ chmod 770 out
$ ls -ldg out
drwxrwx---  2 applmgr  misappl   29423   Jan 12 10:27 out/
       ^ ^
```

Change directory group Change a directory's group to the new UNIX Edition group:

```
$ chgrp <group> <directory>
```

Here is an example:

```
$ chgrp glusers out
$ ls -ldg out
drwxrwx--- 2 applmgr  glusers   29423  Jan 12 10:27 out/
```

The system response indicates that the group has been changed from *misappl* to *glusers*.

Alter file privilege for concurrent manager files (optional) The operating system user who starts the concurrent managers (applmgr) owns all log and output files created by the managers. Oracle Applications uses the UNIX command umask to remove write privilege to these files from all users except the owner. You can change the file privileges by changing the value of umask used by Oracle Applications.

The startmgr script uses the umask value set by the environment variable $APPLMSK in fndenv. You can change this value simply by modifying $APPLMSK. For higher security, however, override the value of $APPLMSK in startmgr. If you are setting up parallel concurrent processing, do the same for dcpbatch.

To modify the umask value in startmgr or dcpbatch, change to $FND_TOP/bin and display the script with the file editor of your choice. Find the following line:

```
umask ${APPLMSK-"022"}
```

This line indicates that if $APPLMSK is not set, the umask command uses the value 022. You can modify the alternate value by substituting a new one. For example:

```
umask ${APPLMSK-"026"}
```

You must use a 3-digit value as an argument to override $APPLMSK. For example:

```
umask 022
```

> **Note:** The UNIX man page for umask contains more information on the umask command and mask settings.

If you change umask values, remember that the owner of a file should always have read and write privilege for the file.

Restrict access to scripts (optional) To enhance security, give only the applmgr login write permission for startmgr and batchmgr. If you are using parallel concurrent

processing, do the same for dcpstart and dcpbatch. Also change the restrictions on any custom scripts that call these files. The following commands prevent all users except applmgr from altering the scripts:

```
$ cd $FND_TOP/bin
$ chmod 700 startmgr batchmgr dcpstart dcpbatch
```

Step 15: Load attachment files into database (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7NCA, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

In Releases 10.7NCA and 11.0, the Oracle Applications Attachments feature supported attaching file-type documents to any application entity. The files were stored in a directory located on the application server. The location of this directory was stored in the Oracle Applications profile option Attachment File Directory. In Release11*i*, file-type attachments are no longer stored as files in the operating system, but are now stored in the database. In the pre-upgrade steps, you determined the location of the existing attachment files, if any. Now, you must load any existing attachment files into the database.

1. In the operating system on the application server, change to the directory that contains the attachment files (the directory specified by the Attachment File Directory profile option setting you wrote down in a pre-upgrade step).

2. From within that directory, type the following command at the operating system prompt (for UNIX). Type the command all on one line with a space between FND_ATTACH and PLS_CALLBACK:

```
FNDGFU <DB Connect String> 0 Y UPLOAD PROGRAM_NAME=FND_ATTACH \
PLS_CALLBACK=FND_ATTACHMENT_UTIL_PKG.UPDATE_FILE_METADATA *
```

where <DB Connect String> is the username/password@Oracle SID of the APPS account, such as apps/apps@TEST, and * is a wildcard indicating that all files in the directory should be uploaded to the attachments tables in the database.

3. Check the log file produced by FNDGFU (located in the same directory with the file name L<concurrent request ID>.log) and verify that there are no errors.

4. If the log file indicates any errors, correct the problem indicated in the file.

Oracle FlexBuilder/Account Generator Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	1.	Complete installation steps for Oracle Workflow (required)	System Administrator
❏	2.	Complete installation steps for Oracle Workflow Builder (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	3.	Associate FlexBuilder rules for Accounting Flexfield structure and Workflow item type (conditionally required)	Application Specialist / System Administrator
❏	4.	Customize Account Generator process (conditionally required)	Application Specialist / System Administrator

Step 1: Complete installation steps for Oracle Workflow (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**　　　Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Workflow Guide**

Oracle Workflow is installed by AutoUpgrade for use by Oracle Applications products. But, you must perform some manual setup steps after the upgrade processing is complete. The steps are outlined in the *Oracle Workflow Option Server Installation Release Notes*, which are included on the *Oracle Workflow Server* CD.

Step 2: Complete installation steps for Oracle Workflow Builder (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**　　　Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Workflow Client Installation Notes**

You must perform this step if you are customizing the default Account Generator process for your product. Oracle Workflow Builder (client-side) is installed on a PC using Oracle Installer. The *Client Installation Notes* are included on the *Oracle Workflow Client* CD.

Step 3: Associate FlexBuilder rules for Accounting Flexfield structure and Workflow item type (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**　　　Performed by: **Application Specialist / System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Flexfields Guide**

If your installation uses customized flexfields, use the Account Generator Processes window to associate the Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process with the appropriate Accounting Flexfield structure and Workflow item type.

> **Additional Information:** Choosing the Process for a Flexfield Structure, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

Step 4: Customize Account Generator process (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**   Performed by: **Application Specialist / System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Flexfields Guide**

Perform this step if you have customized your Account Generator process for a particular Workflow Account Generator item type and assigned a new name to it. If you made customizations to the default process, but did not change its name, you do not need to perform this step.

The following table shows the Account Generator item types and default processes that you can view and modify using Oracle Workflow. The <product name> Account Generator sections in individual product user's guides contain details.

Product	Item Type	Default Process Name
Oracle Assets	FA Account Generator	Generate Default Account
Oracle Order Entry	Generate Cost of Goods Sold Account	Generate Default Account
Oracle Projects	Project Expense Report Account Generator	Default Account Generator for Expense Reports
	Project Supplier Invoice Account Generator	Generate Default Account
Oracle Purchasing	PO Account Generator	Generate Default Accounts
	PO Requisition Account Generator	Generate Default Accounts
Oracle Receivables	AR Substitute Balancing Segment	Replace Balancing Segment

> **Additional Information:** Account Generator in Oracle Assets, *Oracle Assets User's Guide*; Account Generator in Oracle Order Entry, *Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide*; Account Generator in Oracle Projects, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*; Account Generator in Oracle Purchasing, *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide*; Account Generator in Oracle Receivables, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*

There are three ways to upgrade the Account Generator.

Use a Default Account Generator Process
If the default Account Generator meets your accounting requirements, you can use the Account Generator default processes provided by each product that previously used FlexBuilder. No upgrade step or setup steps are required to use the default. The default processes can also be updated later if necessary.

Migrate Customized Business Rules
If you used FlexBuilder in Release 10.7, and want to continue using the customizations you made to FlexBuilder, you can migrate those business rules into the Account Generator. AutoUpgrade automatically creates a PL/SQL function from your FlexBuilder configuration and a unique process, called Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules, which can be called from the appropriate Oracle Workflow item type.

Using the Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process will make your upgrade faster. However, you should not make any changes to this process if your accounting needs change. (Oracle does not support modifications to the PL/SQL functions or Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules processes.) If you want to use a different configuration from what you had in FlexBuilder and from what is contained in the default process, you should *customize* the default process. If you anticipate changing the Account Generator rules frequently or on short notice, you should create a *new* custom Account Generator process during the upgrade, because this process will be a more suitable starting point for future changes.

> **Note:** If you used FlexBuilder in Release 10.7, but did not customize the default configuration, you do not need to use the Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules processes. The default processes have the same result as the FlexBuilder defaults.

Customize a Default Account Generator Process
If a default Account Generator processes does not satisfy your accounting requirements, you can use Oracle Workflow to customize it. Create a new process or copy the existing default and change the name. Then use the renamed process as a base for your changes.

> **Additional Information:** Customizing the Account Generator, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

To determine necessary upgrade actions:

Use the following chart to determine the actions you need to take, according to the way you choose to upgrade from FlexBuilder to the Account Generator.

For users of...	who use the default(s)...	who use customized FlexBuilder...	who customize the default...
Oracle Assets Oracle Order Entry Oracle Purchasing Oracle Receivables	No action.	.See Step 3.	Complete this step.
Oracle Projects	Default is incomplete. Customize.	See Step 3.	Complete this step.

To customize the Account Generator process:

1. Use Oracle Workflow to create a new process. Or, copy the existing default and change its name, and then use the renamed process as a base for your changes.

    Additional Information: Customizing the Account Generator, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*; individual product user's guides

2. Test your new process.

    Additional Information: Testing Your Account Generator Setup, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

3. Use the Account Generator Processes window to associate the new process with the appropriate Accounting Flexfield structure and Workflow item type.

    Additional Information: Choosing the Process for a Flexfield Structure, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

Oracle Workflow Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	1. Link WFMAILOO (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Link WFMAILOO (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **Using AD Utilities**	

Since the adrelink utility does not provide support for conditionally linking a specific WFMAIL variant, Oracle Internet Messaging users must link WFMAILOO manually.

> **Note:**   Perform this step only if Oracle Internet Messaging is installed.

Use adrelink to link the WFMAILOO executable:

```
adrelink force=y "fnd WFMAILOO"
```

Then copy this executable to WFMAIL (since WFMAIL is what is run by the concurrent request).

Country-specific Financials Product Family

The following Category 4 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Country-specific Financials product family.

Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks

Checklist		Performed for this country...
❑	**1.** Modify migrated lookups and customized modules (conditionally required)	All

Step 1: Modify migrated lookups and customized modules (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **All**	Perform if upgrading from: **10SC Production 16.1 (or higher), 11.0**
Performed by: **System Administrator / IS Manager**	Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Developer's Guide**

After reviewing the results of the migration, you may need to modify migrated lookups and customized modules if the customized modules reference truncated lookup codes or renamed lookup meanings.

No seeded lookup codes are affected by the truncation. Some meanings for seeded lookup codes may be renamed if you are using multiple sets of books, but Oracle Applications generic modules reference only lookup codes, not their meanings.

During the upgrade, the original JA lookup tables (JA_LOOKUP_TYPES and JA_ LOOKUPS) are renamed to JA_LOOKUP_TYPES_OLD and JA_LOOKUPS_OLD, respectively. Views with the original table names are created instead. These views are based on FND lookup tables to which JA lookups are migrated. The upgrade does not remove these _OLD tables. You can use them as a reference if you need to manually change the migrated lookups or customized modules.

If your customized modules reference obsolete lookups, you may need to manually migrate the obsolete lookups from the _OLD tables, since the upgrade does not migrate obsolete lookups. You may also need to modify customized modules accordingly. (Release 11*i* Oracle Applications generic modules do not reference obsolete lookups.)

> **Additional Information:**   Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific, *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*

Oracle Financials Common Country Features Tasks

Checklist		Perform for this country...
❑	**1.** Upgrade descriptive flexfield dates to use the new AOL date validation (conditionally required)	All

Step 1: Upgrade descriptive flexfield dates to use the new AOL date validation (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **All**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**
Performed by: **Database Administrator**	

The validation for date fields within globalization flexfields was changed in Release 11 so that you can correctly store and retrieve date information in globalization flexfield attribute columns, regardless of the language that was used when dates were entered. Run this script to upgrade date values in the flexfield columns:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $JG_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzupgd.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %JG_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzupgd.sql
```

Because the language that you use determines the way dates are entered, you should run this script once for each language that is installed.

Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family

The following Category 4 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Manufacturing and Distribution product family. Because they are closely related, the tasks for Oracle Inventory, Oracle Cost Management, and Oracle Work in Process have been combined under one heading.

Oracle e-Commerce Gateway Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	**1.** Report output interface data file definitions (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	**2.** Report cross-reference data definitions (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Report output interface data file definitions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	

Both ECEUGR.sql (for Release 10.7) and ECELAYDR.sql (for Release 11.0) generate a report of output interface definitions after the upgrade, which can assist in restoring definitions you need at your site. Run the script (for either Release 10.7 or Release 11.0) and compare your data definitions with the ones in the report you ran in Category 2. Enter the name of the output file and the transaction code (select from list of values) at the prompts.

If you are upgrading from Release 10.7:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $EC_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %EC_TOP%\admin\sql
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR.sql
```

If you are upgrading from Release 11.0:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $EC_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECELAYDR.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %EC_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECELAYDR.sql
```

Step 2: Report cross-reference data definitions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	

Both ECEUGR2.sql (for Release 10.7) and ECEXREFR.sql (for Release 11.0) generate a report of cross-reference data definitions after the upgrade, which can assist in restoring the definitions you need at your site. Run the script (for either Release 10.7 or Release 11.0) and compare your data definitions with the ones in the report you ran in Category 2. Enter the name of the output file and the transaction code (select from list of values) at the prompts.

If you are upgrading from Release 10.7:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $EC_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR2.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %EC_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR2.sql
```

If you are upgrading from Release 11.0:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $EC_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEXREFR.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %EC_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEXREFR.sql
```

6

Category 5 — Before Using Your Products

This chapter describes the upgrade finishing steps (also known as post-upgrade steps) that must be run before you begin to use specific Oracle Applications products. We refer to these steps as Category 5 — they affect only a specific product, making it unavailable until the steps are complete. In this chapter, you will perform Category 5 steps for the following products:

Applications Technology Products

The following Category 5 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the Applications Technology products.

Application Implementation Wizard Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**1.**	Check past implementation status (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❏	**2.**	Purge invalid Wizard tasks (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❏	**3.**	Verify application server DAD for Oracle Applications (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Check past implementation status (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Application Implementation Wizard**

During the upgrade, azwpdt.sql moves old Wizard data into archive tables. In addition, azwarsum.sql and azwardet.sql produce two reports (azwarsum.lst and axwardet.lst) that you can use to check past implementation status stored in the archive tables. The reports are stored in $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out (where SID is the current value of $ORACLE_SID). NT users can find them in %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out, where SID is the current value of %ORACLE_SID%. Run these reports at any time by typing:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $AZ_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @azwardet.sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @azwarsum.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %AZ_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @azwardet.sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @azwarsum.sql
```

When you run the detail report (azwardet.sql), extract all processes by entering % as a parameter, or extract only those processes with completed status by specifying a specific item key. For example, azwardet.sql % or azwardet.sql 8.

When running the summary report (azwarsum.sql), extract all processes by entering % as the first parameter, or extract only those process with completed status by specifying C. You can also extract all processes that have comments or those that do not, by specifying Y or N, respectively. For example:

azwarsum.sql % Y   all processes with comments

azwarsum.sql % N   all processes without comments

azwarsum.sql C Y   completed processes with comments

azwarsum.sql C N   completed processes without comments

Step 2: Purge invalid Wizard tasks (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Application Implementation Wizard**

During the upgrade, azwinvtk.sql creates a spool file (azwinvtk.out), which contains the item_type, item_key, begin_date, and process_name of all invalid Wizard tasks. It places the file in the $APPL_TOP/admin/<TWO_TASK>/out directory, where <TWO_TASK> is the name of your database. NT users will find this in %APPL_TOP%\admin\<LOCAL>\out. This script runs after the azwupg.sql script during an upgrade (or installation) of Oracle Applications.

The azwinvtk.out file contains invalid tasks. Purge the tasks by running a workflow script (wfrmitms.sql) from the sql directory in the APPS schema under FND_TOP. It deletes all runtime data for a given item_type and item_key. For example, to delete an item_type of AZWF001 and item_key of 851, run wfrmitms.sql and specify these values.

Step 3: Verify application server DAD for Oracle Applications (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Application Implementation Wizard**

Verify that the DAD you have set up for the APPS schema is working properly.

> **Additional Information:**   *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Oracle Self-Service Web Applications (and Expenses) Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**1.**	Reapply extensions and customizations (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Reapply extensions and customizations (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

If appropriate, reapply any unprotected extensions and customizations for Self-Service Web Applications and Oracle Self-Service Expenses. These may include:

In this product...	reapply these extensions and customizations...
Self-Service Web Applications	■ Custom PL/SQL in Oracle Workflow definitions ■ Modified Workflow messages ■ Modified HTML online help ■ Modified Web Application Dictionary inquiry flows and transaction flows
Self-Service Expenses	■ Modified Workflow messages ■ Modified HTML online help ■ Custom PL/SQL in the following hooks: CustomPopulatePoplist, CustomPopulateDefault, CustomValidateFlexValues, CustomCalculateAmount, CustomDefaultCostCenter, CustomValidateCostCenter

> **Additional Information:** Online User Help, *Self-Service Expenses Implementation Manual*

Financials Product Family

The following Category 5 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Financials product family.

Oracle General Ledger Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❑	**1.** Migrate conflicting daily rates to new or existing rate types (conditionally required)	Database Administrator/ Application Specialist (GL)

Step 1: Migrate conflicting daily rates to new or existing rate types (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / Application Specialist (GL)**

Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger (Public Sector GL) User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle General Ledger**

Perform this step if you:

- maintain daily rates for more than one set of books in the same Release 10.7 Applications installation.

- want to retain descriptive flexfield information associated with your daily rates.

You will use the SQL*Plus script discussed in Step 3 of this task to migrate all the daily rates for which you want to retain descriptive flexfield information.

> **Note:** Even though users should not log on before you complete this step, the person performing the upgrade can log on to check the upgrade success or failure, examine upgraded daily rates, or define new conversion types.

To migrate conflicting daily rates:

1. Run the Daily Rates Conflict report using the following SQL*Plus script:

   For UNIX users:

   ```
   $ cd $GL_TOP/admin/sql
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtrpt.sql
   ```

   For NT users:

   ```
   C:\> cd %GL_TOP%\admin\sql
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtrpt.sql
   ```

2. Review the report to see if any daily rates conflict. If no conflicts exist, and you do not want to retain any descriptive flexfields associated with your daily rates, omit the remainder of this step.

3. If conflicting rates exist, or if you want to retain descriptive flexfields, run the following script:

   For UNIX users:

   ```
   $ cd $GL_TOP/admin/sql
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtmrt.sql
   ```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %GL_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtmrt.sql
```

The script requires the following parameters:

For this parameter...	Enter the following...
Set of Books Name	the name of the set of books from which you want to transfer rates.
From Conversion Type	the conversion type of the rates to be transferred.
From Currency	the From currency of the rates to be transferred. Or, enter ALL to transfer rates for all from currencies.
From Date	the starting date (in the format DD-MON-YYYY) in the range of dates for which daily rates will be transferred. Or, enter ALL to transfer rates starting with the earliest date for which daily rates are defined.
To Date	the ending date (in the format DD-MON-YYYY) in the range of dates for which daily rates will be transferred. Or, enter ALL to transfer all rates starting with the From Date up to and including the most recent date for which daily rates are defined.
Destination Conversion Type	the conversion type to assign to the rate after it has been transferred. This conversion type must already exist.
Override Flag	Y if you want to replace rates that already exist in the rate set. Enter N if you only want to add new rates to the rate set.

> **Note:** Do not use leading or trailing spaces when entering these parameters. Also note that the parameters are case-sensitive.

4. To retain descriptive flexfield information for your daily rates, use the Descriptive Flexfield Segments window to redefine the daily rates descriptive flexfields you used in Release 10.7.

> **Attention:** You must define the descriptive flexfields in the new GL_DAILY_RATES table because the Release 10.7 definitions are not transferred from the GL_DAILY_ CONVERSION_RATES table.

Global Accounting Engine Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	1.	Migrate existing date and non-integer data from character columns to date and number type columns (required)	Database Administrator / Application Specialist
❏	2.	Update existing balances to comply with the Archive and Purge data model and the new balance calculation model (required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
❏	3.	Migrate obsolete event types and document statuses to new event types and document statuses (required)	System Administrator
❏	4.	Upgrade the Transfer to GL posted flag from the accounting line level to the accounting header level (required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Migrate existing date and non-integer data from character columns to date and number type columns (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / Application Specialist**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Product Update Notes, Oracle Applications Global Accounting Engine User's Guide, Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual**	Do before anyone uses: **Global Accounting Engine, Oracle Receivables, Oracle Payables, or Oracle Inventory**

Scripts are available to migrate date and non-integer data that was previously stored in character columns to the date and number columns. You must complete the following tasks before you run the scripts:

1. Set the NLS_DATE_FORMAT environment variable to DD-MON-RR.

2. Ensure that NLS_LANG is set to the same language used prior to upgrading.

3. Ensure that NLS_NUMERIC_CHARACTERS is set to the same format used prior to upgrading.

> **Note:** These scripts were designed to migrate data originally created in one language, one numeric character format, and a date format of either DD-MON-RR or YYYY/MM/DD. When you run them, an error message appears if more than one language, one numeric character format, or a date format other than DD-MON-RR or YYYY/MM/DD was used to store the date in the character column. If you get this error message because of one of these conditions, you must update the character column values to use the same format before you run these scripts.

Run this script to migrate data for the AX_SLE_LINES table:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $AX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos01.sql <batchsize>
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %AX_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos01.sql <batchsize>
```

Run this script to migrate data for the AX_DOCUMENT_STATUSES table. Use a batchsize that is appropriate for your environment.

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $AX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos02.sql <batchsize>
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %AX_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos02.sql <batchsize>
```

Step 2: Update existing balances to comply with the Archive and Purge data model and the new balance calculation model (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Global Accounting Engine User's Guide, Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual**	Do before anyone uses: **Global Accounting Engine**

This step updates existing accounting entry lines and balances to be used with the new balance calculation model that was introduced as a patch in Release 10.7 and included in the base releases of 11.0 and 11*i*. If the data was not updated through the Release 10.7 patch, it is updated with this step. This script can be run for any release, for any configuration, even if the 10.7 patch has already been applied.

The upgrade script marks a balance as an initial balance if it is in the earliest NET-xxxx period and no accounting entries exist for that year. The script updates the HISTORIC_BALANCE column in the AX_BALANCES table and populates new columns in the AX_SLE_LINES and AX_BALANCES tables. Prior to Release 11*i*, the HISTORIC_BALANCE flag in the AX_BALANCES table had a value of *Y* if the balance was an initial balance or *N* if the balance was created from the accounting lines. The script changes the HISTORIC_BALANCE flag from *Y* to *H* to more closely reflect the flag's definition.

Run this script to update your existing accounting lines and balances:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $AX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos03.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %AX_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos03.sql
```

> **Note:** This script may take a long time to complete because it updates all accounting lines and balances. It must run to completion before users can use the Global Accounting Engine.

Step 3: Migrate obsolete event types and document statuses to new event types and document statuses (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual**	Do before anyone uses: **Global Accounting Engine**

Release 11*i* translation rules were rewritten to use a different data model. You must migrate existing events and document statuses to reflect rewritten translation rules.

This Event Type...	Is Changed to...
AP_CE_CLEAR	CASH_CLEARED
AP_CE_CLEAR	CASH_UNCLEARED
FUTURE_CLEARED	FUTURE_CLEARED
FUTURE_REVERSED	FUTURE_UNCLEARED

New event types are: FUTURE_MATURED, PREPAYMENT_APPLIED, and PREPAYMENT_UNAPPLIED.

Prior to this release, the AP_CE_CLEAR event type was used to specify a clearing or unclearing event. In Release 11*i*, two new event types, CASH_CLEARED and CASH_UNCLEARED, are used to specify a clearing and unclearing event, respectively. This more closely matches business transactions against event types. Run this script to update the AX_EVENTS and AX_DOCUMENT_STATUSES tables to use new event types. Use a batchsize that is appropriate for your environment.

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $AX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos04.sql <batchsize>
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %AX_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos04.sql <batchsize>
```

Step 4: Upgrade the Transfer to GL posted flag from the accounting line level to the accounting header level (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Global Accounting Engine**

The Transfer to GL program posted flag is at the accounting header level for posted accounting entries. Run axxpos05.sql to transfer the posted flag from the line to the header level for all existing accounting entries and update the accounting lines. Use a batchsize that is appropriate for your environment.

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $AX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos05.sql <batchsize>
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %AX_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos05.sql <batchsize>
```

Oracle Payables Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	1. Remodify payment formats (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
❏	2. Create or modify data for data model changes for MRC (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
❏	3. Set up prepayment payment terms (recommended)	Application Specialist (Payables)

Step 1: Remodify payment formats (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**

Reference manual: **Setting Up Custom Formats, Payment Formats, and Defining and Maintaining Payables Payment Documents (Oracle Payables User's Guide)**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Payables**

You do *not* need to perform this step if you are upgrading from an English-only installation and have never renamed or modified the attributes of any Payables seeded payment format.

> **Attention:** Unless these two conditions are true, you *MUST* do this step for all Latin American countries that have country-specific Payment Formats (Argentine, Brazil, Chile, and Colombia). It must be performed for both Release 10.7 and Release 11.0 installations.

In Release 11, we enhanced the architecture of each of the seeded payment formats. If you modified Release 10.7 payment formats, you need to replace them with the Release 11/11*i* formats. A payment format may have been modified as follows:

- You renamed it in the Payment Formats window.

- You changed its attributes in the Payment Formats window.

- Oracle translated the name for a non-English version of Payables.

Perform this step to ensure all Release 11 payment formats use the same names and attributes as the payment formats you used before the upgrade. This will provide continued support of your Payables seeded payment formats in future releases.

During the upgrade, the system identifies each Payables seeded payment format that requires this step and adds a @ symbol to the beginning of its name. Run the following script to create a list of all modified payment formats assigned to payment documents:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apucfrpt.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apucfrpt.sql
```

This script produces the apucfrpt.lst report, which lists the following values for each modified payment format that you have assigned to a payment document: Bank, Branch, Account, Payment Document, and Payment Format.

For each payment format on the report, perform the following steps.

1. In the Payment Formats window, query the name of the seeded (unmodified) payment format you used to create your modified payment format.

2. Duplicate the attributes and name of the modified payment format.

3. Save your work.

4. Open the Payment Documents window of the Banks form.

5. Query the payment document to which you had assigned the modified payment format.

6. In the Payment Format field, delete the @ from the payment format name so that it matches the new Release 11-based payment format name.

7. Save your work.

Step 2: Create or modify data for data model changes for MRC (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Payables**

If you have implemented MRC, run ap115mrc.sql to upgrade existing AP/MRC data for the new accounting data model. This script uses the exchange rates that were determined in Category 3. Run ap115mrc.sql for each MRC schema. Enter a batch size at the prompt.

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS_MRC username>/<APPS_MRC password> @ap115mrc.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS_MRC username>/<APPS_MRC password> @ap115mrc.sql
```

Step 3: Set up prepayment payment terms (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**

Reference manual: **Payment Terms (Oracle Payables User's Guide)**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Payables**

The prepayment functionality was completely re-coded for Release 11*i*. In order to get the same default behavior (payment terms of Immediate when entering a prepayment-type invoice), you must set up prepayment payment terms. This step sets up default payment terms for your Prepayment invoice types. For example, you may want to default Immediate payment terms to all prepayments.

1. For each operating unit, choose Setup > Invoice > Payment Terms.

2. In the Payment Terms window, define the payment terms that you want to use as the default for all prepayments. Save your work.

3. For each operating unit, navigate to the Payables Options window (Setup > Options > Payables).

4. Select the Invoice tabbed region. In the Prepayment Payment Terms field, enter the default payment terms. Save your work.

Oracle Projects Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	1. Review organization hierarchies and uses of organizations (required)	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
❏	2. Update project status values (required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
❏	3. Update customized billing extensions with changes in predefined procedures (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❏	4. Review and update billing cycle names (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
❏	5. Convert custom overtime calculation program to PL/SQL (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
❏	6. Populate billing title for employee assignments (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
❏	7. Set up the invoice rounding account (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
❏	8. Add new parameters to customized invoice-related client extensions (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
❏	9. Add new parameters to customized transaction control extension (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Checklist		Performed by
❑	**10.** Add new currencies and non-recoverable tax amounts to commitment views (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❑	**11.** Update custom code that populates the Transaction Interface table (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❑	**12.** Reinstall customized client extension packages and views (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❑	**13.** Correct FIFO marking of expenditure items for projects using event billing (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
❑	**14.** Update custom code that uses Oracle Activity Management Gateway APIs (recommended)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Review organization hierarchies and uses of organizations (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

During the upgrade, Oracle Projects updated your organizations to the new organization reference model used by Oracle Projects. You may want to change some of the Project/Task/Invoice Organizations that resulted from the update process. In Release 10.7 and earlier, you could control which organizations were used as Project Task Owning/Invoice Organizations by Operating Unit. That is, the same organization could be a Project/Task Owning/Invoice Organization in one operating unit but not in a different one. This could happen if you had specified different Project Organization Types for the operating units in the PA implementations option.

In Release 11.0 and later, the Project Organization type is not used to identify the organizations that own project/tasks or invoices. Instead, the organization classifications Project/Task Owning Organization and Invoice Organization specified at the organization level are used for this purpose. (Organizations are shared among operating units in a business group). Therefore, after the upgrade, you might have organizations in some operating units that you did not intend to use as Project/Task Owning or Invoice Organizations. Run the following script to determine the organizations that were upgraded under this condition:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @paupgor2.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @paupgor2.sql
```

The script paupgor2.sql creates a report, paxupor2.lst in the sql subdirectory under the admin directory in your PA_TOP. The report shows the organizations, for each operating unit, that you designated, in Release 10.7 or earlier, as project or invoice organizations.

If the report contains any data, you must define a new organization hierarchy, for each related operating unit, that does not contain the listed organizations. Then, assign the new organization hierarchy as the new Project/Task Owning or Invoice Organization in the PA Implementation Options.

To build an organization hierarchy:

1. Navigate to the Organization Hierarchy window (Setup > Human Resources > Organizations > Hierarchies).

2. Use this window to enter a new organization hierarchy, or copy an organization hierarchy from an existing one and modify it.

3. Save your work.

To assign the new organization hierarchy as the new Project/Task Owning or Invoice Organization:

1. Navigate to the Implementation Options window (Setup > System > Implementation Options).

2. Select the Project Setup tab.

3. Enter the new organization hierarchy you have created in the appropriate Organization Hierarchy field - Project/Task owning or Invoice.

> **Additional Information:** Organizations in Oracle Projects, Organization Hierarchy, and Implementation Options, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 2: Update project status values (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

In Release 11.0, Oracle Projects introduced several new fields for project statuses in the Project Statuses window. One of the new fields is System Status.

During the upgrade, Oracle Projects populated each of your Release 10.7 user-defined project statuses with the System Status of Upgraded. You must update each of these statuses with the appropriate System Status.

To update the System Status for your user-defined project statuses:

1. Navigate to the Project Statuses window (choose Setup > Projects > Statuses).

2. Query all the records with a System Status of Upgraded.

3. For each of the project statuses displayed, select the appropriate System Status from the list of values. You can also change the status controls (actions allowed for each project status), which were set to default values during the upgrade.

4. Save your changes.

5. Run the query again and ensure that there are no records with a System Status of Upgraded.

> **Additional Information:**   Project Statuses, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 3: Update customized billing extensions with changes in predefined procedures (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Perform this step only if you have installed Project Billing and use predefined public procedures in billing extensions.

Oracle Projects provides public procedures to be used in your billing extensions. The names of these procedures have been changed to comply with Oracle Applications naming standards. If your company uses any of the Oracle Projects predefined public procedures in your billing extensions, you must modify the extensions to use the new procedure names. The old names and the new names of the predefined public procedures are:

Old Name: package.procedure	New Name: package.procedure
pb_public.insert_event	pa_billing_pub.insert_event
pb_public.insert_message	pa_billing_pub.insert_message
pb_public.get_budget_amount	pa_billing_pub.get_budget_amount

In addition, new parameters have been added to the procedures. If your company uses any of the Oracle Projects predefined public procedures in your billing extensions, then you must add these new parameters to the billing extensions. The new parameters that have been added to the public procedures are:

Package.Procedure	New Parameters
pa_billing_pub.insert_event	x_audit_amount(1-10)
	x_audit_cost_budget_type_code
	x_audit_rev_budget_type_code
	x_error_message
	x_status
pa_billing_pub.insert_message	x_error_message
	x_status
pa_billing_pub.get_budget_amount	p_cost_budget_type_code
	p_rev_budget_type_code
	x_cost_budget_type_code
	x_rev_budget_type_code
	x_error_message
	x_status

Additional Information: Billing Extensions, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 4: Review and update billing cycle names (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Perform this step only if you have installed Project Billing.

Your project billing cycle data has been upgraded to the enhanced billing cycle model. Billing cycles were created, based on your existing projects, as follows:

Billing Cycle Field	Value
Name	Billing Cycle Days: *n* (*n* = the value of Bill Cycle Days)
Type	Bill Cycle Days
Bill Cycle Days	The value of Billing Cycle for a project

Each project was associated with the new billing cycle name. Review all the names of the billing cycle codes in the Billing Cycles window, and change them if you want to. To review the new billing cycle names:

1. Navigate to the Billing Cycles window (Setup > Billing > Billing Cycle). For all the billing cycles created during the upgrade, it displays the Name, Type, Value, and Effective Dates.

2. Review the upgraded billing cycle names and change any of the billing cycle names as appropriate.

3. Save your work.

>   **Additional Information:**   Billing Cycles, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 5: Convert custom overtime calculation program to PL/SQL (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Perform this step only if you have implemented Projects Overtime Calculation.

Before Release 11.0, overtime calculation could be set up in a SQL*Report (PAXDLCOT.rpt) located in the Oracle Projects report directory. This report was called by the PRC: Distribute Labor Costs process.

In Release 11.0, the overtime calculation process was converted to the Overtime Calculation Extension, a PL/SQL procedure in PAXDLCOS.pls and PAXDLCOB.pls, located in the sql subdirectory under the admin directory. If you have customized PAXDLCOT.rpt, you must rewrite your customizations in the new files.

>   **Additional Information:**   Overtime Calculation Extension, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 6: Populate billing title for employee assignments (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Perform this step only if you have installed Project Billing and implemented employee billing titles for your invoice formats.

Starting with Release 11.0, Oracle Projects looks for an employee billing title in the TITLE column of the PER_ASSIGNMENTS_F table. In earlier versions, this value was stored in the descriptive flexfield column (ASS_ATTRIBUTE1) of the same table.

You must populate the billing title on the employee assignments in the new column. A sample script populates the TITLE column with the contents of the ASS_ATTRIBUTE1 column and sets the ASS_ATTRIBUTE1 column to null. If the flexfield has been set up, you must modify this script appropriately. To run the script:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa11u506.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa11u506.sql
```

> **Additional Information:** Employees and Employee Assignments, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 7: Set up the invoice rounding account (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

If you have Project Billing installed, you must set up the Rounding AutoAccounting Function Transaction for the function Transfer Revenue and Invoice Account.

The Rounding AutoAccounting Function Transaction is implemented in Release 11*i* as part of the Multi-Currency Billing feature. If you have Project Billing installed, you must set up this function regardless of whether you plan to bill customers in currencies other than the project functional currency.

To set up the Rounding Account, follow these steps:

1. Navigate to the Assign AutoAccounting Rules window (choose Setup > AutoAccounting > Assign Rules).

2. In the Function Name field, select Revenue and Invoice Accounts, then choose Find. The function transactions for Revenue and Invoice Accounts will then be displayed in the Function Transactions region.

3. Check the Enabled check box to enable the Rounding Account. Enter segment rule pairings to set up the account.

4. Save your work.

> **Additional Information:** AutoAccounting, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 8: Add new parameters to customized invoice-related client extensions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Complete this step only if you have Project Billing installed and have customized the Automatic Invoice Approve/Release client extension or the AR Transaction Types client extension.

The following table lists each procedure affected by this change, and the file where the procedure is located. (Files are located in $PA_TOP/admin/sql. For NT, they are in %PA_TOP%\admin\sql.)

Client Extension	Procedure Name	File
AR Transaction Types	PA_Client_Extn_Inv_Transfer.Get_AR_Trx_Type	PAXPTRXB.pls
Automatic Invoice Approve/Release	PA_Client_Extn_Inv_Actions.Approve_Invoice	PAXPIACB.pls
Automatic Invoice Approve/Release	PA_Client_Extn_Inv_Actions.Release_Invoice	PAXPIACB.pls

The following parameters have been added to these client extensions:

Parameter Name	Description
p_project_currency_code	project currency code
p_project_amount	project currency amount
p_inv_currency_code	invoice currency code
p_invoice_amount	invoice currency amounts

If your company uses any of these client extensions, you must add these new parameters to the client extensions.

> **Additional Information:**   AR Transaction Types Extension and Automatic Invoice Approval/Release Extension, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 9: Add new parameters to customized transaction control extension (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Complete this step only if you have customized the transaction Control extension in Project Costing.

New parameters have been added to the Transaction Control extension. If your company uses this client extension, you must add these new parameters to your customized Transaction Control extension. The new parameters are:

Parameter Name	Description
x_denom_currency_code	transaction currency code
x_denom_raw_cost	transaction currency raw cost amount
x_acct_currency_code	functional currency code
x_acct_raw_cost	functional currency raw cost amount
x_acct_rate_type	exchange rate type used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
x_acct_rate_date	exchange rate date used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
x_acct_exchange_rate	exchange rate used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
x_attribute11	descriptive flexfield segment 11

Parameter Name	Description
x_attribute15	descriptive flexfield segment 15
x_vendor_id	supplier identifier for supplier invoice transactions
x_msg_application	application identifier for the out message
x_msg_type	type of message (error or warning)
x_token1	token for display with message
x_token2	token for display with message
x_token3	token for display with message

> **Additional Information:** Client Extensions, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 10: Add new currencies and non-recoverable tax amounts to commitment views (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (for advanced users only)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide, Oracle Cost Management User's Guide, and Oracle Project Management User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

New columns have been added in the commitment views to support multi-currency transactions, non-recoverable tax invoice lines, purchase order lines, and requisition lines. If you have customized these views, you must update them to include the new columns. The following commitment views have been changed:

PA_COMMITMENT_TXNS_V	PA_PROJ_REQ_DISTRIBUTIONS
PA_PROJ_PO_DISTRIBUTIONS	PA_PROJ_AP_INV_DISTRIBUTIONS

PA_COMMITMENT_TXNS_V

New Column	Description
denom_currency_code	transaction currency code
denom_raw_cost	transaction currency raw cost amount
denom_burdened_cost	transaction currency burdened cost amount
acct_currency_code	functional currency code
acct_raw_cost	functional currency raw cost amount

New Column	Description
acct_burdened_cost	functional currency burdened cost amount
acct_rate_date	exchange rate date used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_rate_type	exchange rate type used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_exchange_rate	exchange rate used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
receipt_currency_code	receipt currency code
receipt_currency_amount	receipt currency amount
receipt_exchange_rate	receipt currency exchange rate

These columns have been deleted: tot_cmt_raw_cost, tot_cmt_burdened_cost, amount_delivered.

PA_PROJ_REQ_DISTRIBUTIONS and PA_PROJ_PO_DISTRIBUTIONS.
The AMOUNT column has been changed to include non-recoverable taxes.

New Column	Description
denom_currency_code	transaction currency code
denom_amount	transaction currency amount (including non-recoverable tax amount)
acct_currency_code	functional currency code
acct_rate_date	exchange rate date used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_rate_type	exchange rate type used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_exchange_rate	exchange rate used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount

PA_PROJ_AP_INV_DISTRIBUTIONS
Updated to include rows for non-recoverable tax invoice lines.

New Column	Description
denom_currency_code	transaction currency code
denom_amount	transaction currency amount (including non-recoverable tax amount)
acct_currency_code	functional currency code
acct_rate_date	exchange rate date used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_rate_type	exchange rate type used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_exchange_rate	exchange rate used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount

New Column	Description
receipt_currency_code	receipt currency code
receipt_currency_amount	receipt currency amount
receipt_exchange_rate	receipt currency exchange rate

The following views in other applications have also been updated to include foreign currency columns and non-recoverable tax amounts:

- CST_PROMFG_CMT_VIEW

- PJM_REQ_COMMITMENTS_V

- PJM_PO_COMMITMENTS_V

> **Additional Information:** Commitments, *Oracle Projects User's Guide; Oracle Cost Management User's Guide; Oracle Project Management User's Guide*

Step 11: Update custom code that populates the Transaction Interface table (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Perform this step only if you use the Transaction Import program in Project Costing.

New columns have been added to the Transaction Interface table (PA_TRANSACTION_INTERFACE_ALL) to support multi-currency transactions and supplier invoices import. If you use the Transaction Import program to import costed transactions, you must update any custom programs that populate this table. For costed transactions, raw cost should now be inserted into the denom_raw_cost column, and burdened cost into the denom_burdened_cost column.

PA_TRANSACTION_INTERFACE_ALL

New Column	Description
receipt_currency_amount	receipt currency amount – populated only for expense reports
receipt_currency_code	currency in which an expense report item occurred – populated only for expense reports
receipt_exchange_rate	receipt currency exchange rate – populated only for expense reports
denom_currency_code	transaction currency code

New Column	Description
denom_raw_cost	the transaction currency cost – populated only for costed transaction sources
denom_burdened_cost	transaction currency burdened cost – populated only for Burden Costed transaction sources
acct_rate_date	exchange rate date used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_rate_type	exchange rate type used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_exchange_rate	exchange rate used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_raw_cost	functional currency raw cost amount – populated only for Costed transaction sources
acct_burdened_cost	functional currency burdened cost amount – populated only for burden costed transaction sources
acct_exchange_round_limit	The functional currency rounding limit. If the derivation of the functional currency raw cost is within the rounding limit, a transaction is accepted. If not, it is rejected
project_currency_code	project currency code – this value is derived by the system, based on the project number
project_rate_date	the exchange rate date for converting to the project currency
project_rate_type	the conversion rate type for converting to the project currency
project_exchange_rate	the exchange rate for converting to the project currency
reversed_orig_txn_reference	value used to identify the transaction being reversed in the originating system
user_exp_txn_reference	user reference for the expenditure
billable_flag	flag that indicates if the item can accrue revenue
orig_exp_txn_reference1	expenditure identifier in the external system (system reference). For Oracle Payables, the invoice ID should be inserted into this field.
orig_exp_txn_reference_2	additional column provided to group transactions into expenditures
orig_exp_txn_reference3	additional column provided to group transactions into expenditures
orig_user_exp_txn_reference	expenditure identifier in the external system (user reference)
vendor_number	supplier number
override_to_organization_name	override organization name

Additional Information: Transaction Import, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 12: Reinstall customized client extension packages and views (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Perform this step only if you have implemented client extensions or commitment views. You must reinstall all of your customized client extension packages and views in the APPS account.

Additional Information: Client Extensions, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 13: Correct FIFO marking of expenditure items for projects using event billing (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **No**	Users must log off: **Yes**

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

This step pertains to FIFO marking of expenditure items with scheduled payment events in the Generate Draft Invoices process, for projects using the revenue accrual method Cost or Event. Prior to this upgrade, the Generate Draft Invoices process marked as "billed" all the expenditure items with an expenditure item date earlier than the bill through date of the process. Projects now marks expenditure items for scheduled payment events as "billed", only up to the event amount.

Run pa630505.sql from your new APPL_TOP to correct the Billed flag for expenditure items that were incorrectly marked for scheduled payment events.

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa630505.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa630505.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number.

Running this script for all projects at once may take a long time. To reduce processing time, enter a value at the Start Project Number and an End Project Number prompts to run the script for a range of projects at a time. *If you do this, you must still make sure that you run the script for all projects.*

Step 14: Update custom code that uses Oracle Activity Management Gateway APIs (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **Activity Management Gateway Technical Reference Manual**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Perform this step only if you have custom programs that use the APIs provided in Oracle Activity Management Gateway (AMG) and you want to use the new features AMG provides in Release 11*i* of Oracle Projects.

AMG has been enhanced with the following features: Enhanced messaging, Support for new features in Oracle Projects, and Additional APIs and views. To use these new features, you must modify custom code that uses AMG APIs.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Activity Management Gateway Technical Reference Manual*

Oracle Receivables Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**1.**	Create indexes on transaction flexfield columns (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
❏	**2.**	Recreate customized tax vendor extension views (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
❏	**3.**	Update tax vendor descriptive flexfield information (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	**4.**	Set up Tax Accounting (recommended)	Technical Specialist (Receivables)
❏	**5.**	Create contexts and segments for new flexfields (required)	System Administrator
❏	**6.**	Create database objects required for the upgrade of data for MRC (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
❏	**7.**	Create or modify data for data model changes for MRC (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Create indexes on transaction flexfield columns (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables**

If you do not use AutoInvoice, omit this step and proceed to the next. If you use AutoInvoice, you need to create indexes on your transaction flexfield columns so that you can query transaction flexfield information in your invoice headers and lines. Creating indexes can also speed up validation in the AutoInvoice program.

Define indexes on the following tables and columns that you use for your Transaction Flexfield header and line information. For *unique*, concatenated indexes:

Table	Columns
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-15
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-15

For *non-unique*, concatenated indexes:

Table	Columns
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_ALL	interface_header_attribute1-15

Navigate to the Descriptive Flexfield Segments window (Setup > Financials > Flexfields > Descriptive > Segments) and query the Line Transaction Flexfield. Note each context and, for each one, note which segments are enabled using interface line attribute columns from the RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL table.

Then, create both unique and non-unique, concatenated indexes for the same interface line attribute columns in the RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL and RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL tables and for the same interface header attribute columns in the RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_ALL table.

> **Additional Information:** Transaction Flexfields, *Oracle Receivables (or Public Sector Receivables) User's Guide*

If you have only one context defined, you need to create only one index for each table in the list. However, if you have multiple contexts defined, you may want to create multiple indexes per table, according to your needs. For example, suppose your Line Transaction Flexfield has three contexts set up as follows:

Flexfield Context	Attribute Columns assigned to Enabled Segments
Context1	Interface_line_attribute1
Context1	Interface_line_attribute2
Context2	Interface_line_attribute1
Context2	Interface_line_attribute2
Context2	Interface_line_attribute3
Context3	Interface_line_attribute3
Context3	Interface_line_attribute9

You could create three indexes per table, one for each context. Or, you could create two indexes — one for context3 and another for context2. The latter would be used by context1 because context2 has the same first two attribute columns as context1.

If you have licensed Oracle Projects:
If users will be querying transactions based on project numbers, create an index RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_PA1 on the following two columns in table RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_ALL: interface_header_context and interface_header_attribute1.

If you have licensed Oracle Order Entry:
Create an index RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_OE1 on the following two columns in table RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL:

- interface_line_attribute 1

- interface_line_attribute2

Create an index RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_OE2 on the interface_line_attribute6 column in table RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL.

> **Additional Information:** Importing Transactions Using AutoInvoice, *Oracle Receivables (*or *Oracle Public Sector Receivables) User's Guide*

Step 2: Recreate customized tax vendor extension views (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector Receivables User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables**

Complete this step if you implemented the Tax Vendor Extension and customized any of the following Oracle Tax Vendor Extension views:

SO_TAX_LINES_SUMMARY_V	SO_TAX_LINES_CREDIT_CHECK_V
TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V	TAX_LINES_RECURR_INVOICE_V
TAX_LINES_ENGINE_REVERSE_V	TAX_LINES_CREATE_V
TAX_LINES_DELETE_V	TAX_ADJUSTMENTS_V

> **Attention:** If your tax vendor is Taxware® Sales/Use Tax System or Vertex® Quantum, and you have implemented descriptive flexfields, you must perform an additional upgrade step. Refer to *Integrating Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum Release 11i* or *Integrating Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use Tax System.*

For example, you created a file called custom1.sql, which contains the script for customizing the view TAX_LINES_CREATE_V. Recreate the view by typing:

For UNIX users:
```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @<directory>/<file>
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @<directory>/<file>
```

where <directory> is the location of custom1 script and <file> is the name of the custom file.

Add new columns to views
Before your upgrade, you made copies of your customized views or created a script to reinstall your views. Before reinstalling these views, you need to add the additional columns created in Release 11*i*. All the views listed in the Category 5 step, Re-create Customized Tax Vendor Extension View Scripts, have new columns. Take these columns into consideration when making customizations.

To add new columns to the views, you first need to see how the new views are written. Execute the following command to begin a new SQL*Plus session:

For UNIX users:
```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

Then, look at the new view by executing the following commands:

```
SQL> set long 1000000
SQL> spool view
SQL> select text from user_views where view_name='TAX_LINES_CREATE_V';
SQL> exit
```

This creates a file called view.lst that contains the definition of the predefined view. To view the definition of your customized view, do the following:

```
SQL> set long 1000000
SQL> spool customview
SQL> select text from user_views where view_name='<CUSTOM_VIEW>';
SQL> exit
```

where <CUSTOM_VIEW> is the name of your customized view. This creates a file called customview.lst. Compare the contents of customview.lst and view.lst to see which columns and conditions you need to add.

The structure of your customized view must be exactly the same as the view shipped with Oracle Receivables. For example, the number, order, and data type of each column must be the same as the TAX_LINES_CREATE_V view.

Rename customized views
To reduce the number of steps in future upgrades and so that installations with multiple organizations can control which users call an installed third-party application for tax calculations, Oracle Receivables uses a naming structure to group views into sets.

> **Note:** If you have made customizations to a view(s), you must rename *all* views to meet the new naming standard.

To rename a customized view, execute the following commands:

For UNIX users:
```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> rename <CUSTOM_VIEW_NAME> to <NEW_VIEW_NAME>
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> rename <CUSTOM_VIEW_NAME> to <NEW_VIEW_NAME>
```

where <CUSTOM_VIEW_NAME> is the name of your customized view and <NEW_VIEW_NAME> is the new name of the view, using the new naming standard listed as follows:

Oracle	(no additional naming structure)
TaxWare(AVP)	_A added to the view name
Vertex	_V added to the view name
Custom 1	_1 added to the view name
Custom 2	_2 added to the view name
Custom 3	_3 added to the view name
Custom 4	_4 added to the view name
Custom 5	_5 added to the view name

For example, the TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V view would have the following naming structure:

Oracle	TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V
Taxware	TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V_A
Vertex	TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V_V
Custom 1	TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V_1

Step 3: Update tax vendor descriptive flexfield information (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Implementing Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use Tax System** or **Implementing Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables**

Complete this step if your tax vendor is either Taxware Sales/Use Tax System or Vertex Quantum. In previous releases, the point of order acceptance, point of order origin, ship-to, ship-from, and tax exemption information was defined in descriptive flexfields. In Release 11*i*, this information must be entered in the Receivables Salesforce, Organization, and System Options windows. Run

ar115vdr.sql to copy existing information in the descriptive flexfields to the new Release 11i columns. The script header describes the necessary parameters:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $AR_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115vdr.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115vdr.sql
```

> ***Additional Information:*** *Implementing Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use Tax System; Implementing Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum*

Step 4: Set up Tax Accounting (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist (Receivables)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables**

Set up Tax Accounting if you want Oracle Receivables to calculate tax on adjustments, discounts, finance charges, or miscellaneous transactions. Additional setup is required if you want to implement *deferred tax accounting* — an accounting method that enables you to defer tax until payment is received, rather than when the transaction is created.

> **Additional Information:** Tax Accounting, *Oracle Receivables Tax Manual*

Step 5: Create contexts and segments for new flexfields (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Customer enhancements**

The upgrade changes the names of some of the tables containing customer information and also installs new flexfields that refer to the new tables. (After you have completed the installation, the old flexfield titles will have the letters OLD appended.) In this step, you copy the Context Field Values and the values in the Segments Summary from the old flexfields to the new flexfields.

You configure the flexfields by opening two instances of the Descriptive Flexfield Segments window. In the first instance, you query your old, obsolete flexfield titles, which now end in OLD. In the second instance, you query your new flexfield titles. You then copy the information from the old flexfields to the new.

OBSOLETE FLEXFIELD	NEW FLEXFIELD
Customer Information OLD	Customer Information
Address Information OLD	Address Information
Site Use Information OLD	Site Use Information
Customer Credit Profile Information OLD	Customer Credit Profile Information
Customer Profile Amounts OLD	Customer Profile Amounts
Telephone Number Information OLD	Telephone Number Information
Contact Role Information OLD	Contact Role Information
Customer Relationship Information OLD	Customer Relationship Information
Remit Address OLD	Remit Address
Credit Profile Class Information OLD	Credit Profile Class Information
Customer Profile Class Amounts OLD	Customer Profile Class Amounts
Contact Information OLD	Contact Information

1. Navigate to the Descriptive Flexfields Segments window. From the SysAdmin responsibility, choose Application > Flexfield > Descriptive > Segments.

2. Query the first new flexfield; for example, Customer Information. After you run the query, the Customer Information flexfield appears.

3. Without closing the first Descriptive Flexfields Segment window, open a new instance of the Descriptive Flexfields Segments window.

4. Query the old flexfield, which has the letters OLD appended. For example, Customer Information OLD.

> **NOTE:** You now have two Descriptive Flexfields Segments windows open. In one is the new flexfield, Customer Information, with *no* context information displayed. In the other is the old flexfield, Customer Information OLD, with any context information you had previously entered shown in the Context Field Values region at the bottom of the window.

5. Copy the values of the old Context Field Values region into the Context Field Values region of the new flexfield.

6. Save your work.

7. Choose the Segments button to open the Segments Summary window for the old flexfield.

8. Copy and paste the values in the old Segments Summary window into the new Segments Summary window.

9. Save your work.

10. Repeat this procedure for each of the remaining eleven new flexfields.

Step 6: Create database objects required for the upgrade of data for MRC (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables**

If you implemented MRC, perform this step to create a package that is required when you run the next upgrade step. Run this script for each MRC schema:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $AR_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS_MRC username>/<APPS_MRC password> @ARUPGMCS.pls
$ sqlplus <APPS_MRC username>/<APPS_MRC password> @ARUPGMCB.pls
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS_MRC username>/<APPS_MRC password> @ARUPGMCS.pls
C:\> sqlplus <APPS_MRC username>/<APPS_MRC password> @ARUPGMCB.pls
```

> **Note:** Gain/Loss/Rounding accounts may exist for a reporting set of books even though they do not exist for the primary set of books. So, you must set up these accounts for all sets of books before you complete the next step.

Step 7: Create or modify data for data model changes for MRC (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables**

If you have implemented MRC, this step is required to upgrade existing AR/MRC data to the new data model for SLA drilldown and T-accounts. Run this script for each MRC schema:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $AR_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS_MRC username>/<APPS_MRC password> @ar115mrc.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS_MRC username>/<APPS_MRC password> @ar115mrc.sql
```

Country-specific Financials Product Family

The following Category 5 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Country-specific Financials product family.

Oracle Financials Common Countries Features Tasks

Checklist			Perform for this country...
❏	**1.**	Update customized menus that use JG submenus (conditionally required)	All
❏	**2.**	Set up EFT system format information (conditionally required)	Germany, Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, and Switzerland
❏	**3.**	Enable the Swift Code field in the Enter Banks window (conditionally required)	Denmark, Norway, Finland, Switzerland

Step 1: Update customized menus that use JG submenus (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **All**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **System Administrator**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Financials Common Country Features**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Oracle Applications Product Update Notes**	

In Release 10.7 and Release 11, Oracle Financials Common Country Features (JG) included one seeded menu. In Release 11*i*, Oracle Financials Common Country Features includes a separate seeded menu for each application. If you have customized menus that use the Release 10.7 or Release 11 JG menus as submenus, you must update your customized menus to use the Release 11*i* JG menus instead.

For information on defining menus, refer to Menus Window, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*. For details about the JG menus that are seeded in Release 11*i*, refer to Oracle Financials Common Country Features, *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*.

Step 2: Set up EFT system format information (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Germany, Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, and Switzerland**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**
Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Financials for Germany, Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, and Switzerland**

For each Oracle Financials installation, you must review the EFT system formats for each country and verify that the formats are correct. Set up formats when necessary. For instructions on setting up formats, see Entering System Format EFT Information in the country-specific guides for Germany, Netherlands, Norway, and Sweden; and Defining EFT System Formats for DTA and Defining EFT System Formats for SAD in the country-specific guide for Switzerland.

Step 3: Enable the Swift Code field in the Enter Banks window (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Denmark, Finland, Norway, and Switzerland**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 character mode**
Performed by: **Database Administrator**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Financials for Denmark, Finland, Norway, and Switzerland**

Run this script to enable the SWIFT Code field in the Payables Enter Banks window:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $JG_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzswft.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %JG_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzswft.sql
```

Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks

Checklist		Perform for this country...
❏	**1.** Upgrade character-mode responsibilities (recommended)	All
❏	**2.** Update customized menus that use JE submenus (conditionally required)	All

Step 1: Upgrade character-mode responsibilities (recommended)

Perform for this country: **All**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 (character mode)**
Performed by: **System Administrator**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Financials for Europe**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**	

Release 11*i* is a GUI-only release — all character-mode responsibilities will become obsolete when you upgrade. They will be automatically disabled and no longer available after the upgrade is complete. You must understand the functional needs of users at your company and re-implement responsibilities as though for a fresh install. Obsolete character mode responsibilities including the following:

If you use...	these character-mode responsibilities are obsolete...
Oracle Payables, Receivables, or General Ledger	Austrian Local Payables, Local Receivables, and Local General Ledger
	Belgian Local Payables, Local Receivables, and Local General Ledger
	Danish Local Payables, Local Receivables, and Local General Ledger
	Finnish Local Payables, Local Receivables, and Local General Ledger
	French Local Payables, Local Receivables, and Local General Ledger
	German Local Payables, Local Receivables, and Local General Ledger
	Italian Local Payables, Local Receivables, and Local General Ledger
	Netherlands Local Payables, Local Receivables, and Local General Ledger

If you use...	these character-mode responsibilities are obsolete...
	Norwegian Local Payables, Local Receivables, and Local General Ledger
	Portuguese Local Payables, Local Receivables, and Local General Ledger
	Spanish Local Payables, Local Receivables, and Local General Ledger
	Swedish Local Payables, Local Receivables, and Local General Ledger
	Swiss Local Payables, Local Receivables, and Local General Ledger
	United Kingdom Local Payables, Local Receivables, and Local General Ledger
Oracle Assets	German Local Assets
	Italian Local Assets
Oracle Order Entry	Italian Local Order Entry and Italian Local Inventory

Oracle Financials for Europe includes a separate responsibility for each application within each country. Each existing GUI responsibility in Release 10.7 and Release 11 corresponds to one or more new responsibilities in Release 11*i*.

Old Responsibility in 10.7 and 11	New Responsibilities in 11i
Austrian Localizations GUI	Austrian AP Localizations and GL Localizations
Belgian Localizations GUI	Belgian AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Czech Localizations (Release 11 only)	Czech AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Danish Localizations GUI	Danish AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Finnish Localizations GUI	Finnish AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
French Localizations GUI	French AP Localizations and GL Localizations
German Localizations GUI	German AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations

Old Responsibility in 10.7 and 11	New Responsibilities in 11i
Greek Localizations (Release 11 only)	Greek AP Localizations, AR Localizations, FA Localizations, and GL Localizations
Hungarian Localizations (Release 11 only)	Hungarian AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Israeli Localizations (Release 11 only)	Not available in Release 11i
Italian Localizations GUI	Italian AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Netherlands Localizations GUI	Netherlands AP Localizations and GL Localizations
Norwegian Localizations GUI	Norwegian AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Polish Localizations (Release 11 only)	Polish AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Portuguese Localizations (Release 11 only)	Portuguese AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Spanish Localizations GUI	Spanish AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Swedish Localizations GUI	Swedish AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Swiss Localizations GUI	Swiss AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Turkish Localizations (Release 11 only)	Turkish AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations

> **Additional Information:**   Defining a Responsibility, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 2: Update customized menus that use JE submenus (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **All**	Perform if upgrading from:**10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **System Administrator**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Financials for Europe**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Oracle Applications Product Update Notes**	

In Release 10.7 and Release 11, Oracle Financials for Europe included one seeded menu for each country. In Release 11*i*, there is a separate seeded menu for each application within each country. If you have customized menus that use the Release 10.7 or Release 11 JE menus as submenus, you must update your customized menus to use the Release 11*i* JE menus instead.

For details about defining menus, see Menus Window, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*. For details about the JE menus that are seeded in Release 11i, see Oracle Financials for Europe, *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*.

Oracle Financials for the Americas Tasks

Checklist			Perform for this country...
❏	1.	Set the value of the JL: Inflation Ratio Precision profile option (required)	Argentina, Chile
❏	2.	Create new lookup codes (required)	Argentina, Colombia
❏	3.	Set tax system options (required)	Argentina, Colombia
❏	4.	Update sales orders and invoices (required)	Argentina, Colombia
❏	5.	Ensure that a valid inventory organization is defined for profile options (required)	Argentina, Brazil, Colombia
❏	6.	Manually associate tax information for each inventory organization location (required)	Brazil
❏	7.	Associate tax groups and tax categories (required)	Brazil, Argentina, Colombia
❏	8.	Cancel and re-enter all unapproved and unposted invoices (conditionally required)	Argentina, Colombia
❏	9.	Archive restored technical appraisals (conditionally required)	Columbia

Step 1: Set the value of the JL: Inflation Ratio Precision profile option (required)

Perform for this country: **Argentina, Chile**	Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**
Performed by: **System Administrator**	Users must log off: **No**
Reference manual: **Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

Be sure that you assign the profile option value that you recorded in Category 1 (JL: Inflation Ratio Precision) to the new profile option.

> **Additional Information:** Define Inflation Ratio Precision, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

Step 2: Create new lookup codes (required)

Perform for this country: **Argentina, Colombia**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, or 11.0**
Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**	Reference manual: **Oracle Applications User's Guide**

From the Application Developers responsibility, use the Application Object Library Lookups window (Application > Lookups > Application Object Library) to create the following lookup codes. Do not enter values in the Start Date Active and End Date Active fields. Check the Enabled check box.

Lookup Code	Lookup Type	Notes
OBS-TC	JLZZ_AR_TX_CATEGRY	**Perform only if upgrading from Release 11.0 and have not applied patch 839884.**
		Assign existing tax codes to this obsolete tax category so that you can query previous tax codes without incurring error messages. This step also lets you view old transactions after you complete the subsequent steps.
OBS-COND	TRANSACTION_ATTRIBUTE	**Perform only if upgrading from Release 10.7.**
		Lets you view old transactions after you complete the subsequent steps. You can view pre-upgrade transactions that did not fail mandatory validations.
OBS-VALUE	JLZZ_AR_TX_ATTR_VALUE	**Perform only if upgrading from Release 10.7.**
		Lets you view old transactions after you complete the subsequent steps. You can view pre-upgrade transactions that did not fail mandatory validations.

> **Additional Information:** Application Utilities Lookups and Application Object Library Lookups, *Oracle Applications User's Guide*

Step 3: Set tax system options (required)

Perform for this country: **Argentina, Colombia**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**	Reference manual: **Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide; Oracle Receivables User's Guide**

Set tax system options for every organization as part of the Latin Tax Engine upgrade if you are using the multi-organization functionality.

1. Navigate to the System Options window (Argentine Receivables > Standard AR > Setup > System > System Options) or (Colombian Receivables > Oracle Receivables > Setup > System > System Options).

2. In the Tax alternate name region, check the Inclusive Tax Used check box and make sure that the Compound Taxes check box is unchecked.

3. In the Miscellaneous alternate name region, open the globalization flexfield.

4. Enter values in the Country Code, Use Legal Messages, and Tax Rule Set fields.

> **Additional Information:** Define System Options, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide;* Defining Receivables System Options, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*

Step 4: Update sales orders and invoices (required)

Perform for this country: **Argentina, Colombia**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**
Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**	Reference manual: **No**

This step is a part of the Latin Tax Engine upgrade. In preparation for updating your sales orders and invoices, you need to first create obsolete tax codes, categories and classes for these previous transactions and then associate the obsolete tax categories with condition and values. Completing these two tasks allows you to successfully view your previously created transactions.

To create obsolete tax codes, categories, and classes for previous transactions: Complete this step for every organization, if you are using multi-org functionality. Use the Argentine Receivables or Colombian Receivables responsibility for this step.

1. Create a tax category.

   In the Latin Tax Categories window (Argentine (or Colombian) Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Categories), create a tax category for upgrading existing transaction and sales order data.

In this field...	Enter this value...
Tax Code	OBS-TC
Effective From	01-JAN-1951
Effective To	31-DEC-4712
Threshold Check Level	Line
Grouping Condition Type	Line
Grouping Condition	Line

   > **Additional Information:**   Define Tax Categories, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

2. Create a tax code.

   In the Tax Codes and Rates window (Argentina—Standard AR > Setup > Tax > Codes, or Colombia—Oracle Receivables > Setup > Tax > Codes), create a tax code for upgrading existing transaction and sales order data.

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Tax Code	OBS-TAX-CODE
Tax Type	Value Added Tax (VAT)
Taxable Basis	Before Discount
Tax Rate %	0.00
Effective Dates - From	01-JAN-1951
Effective Dates - To	<Leave blank>
Enabled	Checked
Displayed	Checked
Tax Category (in Globalization Flexfield)	OBS-TC

   > **Additional Information:**   Define Tax Codes and Rates, *Oracle Receivables Tax User's Guide*

3. Create a fiscal classification code.

   In the Latin Fiscal Classifications window (Argentine (or Colombian) Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Fiscal Classifications), create a fiscal classification code for upgrading existing transaction and sales order data.

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Fiscal Classification Code	OBS-FISCAL
Displayed Value	OBS-FISCAL
Description	OBS-FISCAL
Start Date Active	01-JAN-1951
End Date Active	31-DEC-4712
Tax Category	OBS-TC
From Date	01-JAN-1951
To Date	31-DEC-4712
Tax Code	OBS-TAX-CODE
Enabled	Checked

   > **Additional Information:**   Define Fiscal Classifications, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

4. Create a transaction class.

   In the Latin Tax Condition Classes window (Argentine (or Colombian) Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Condition Classes), create a transaction class used for upgrading existing transaction and sales order data.

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Class Type	Transaction Class
Class Code	OBS-TRANS-CLASS
Description	OBS-TRANS-CLASS
Start Date Active	01-JAN-1951
End Date Active	31-DEC-4712
Tax Category	OBS-TC
Condition Code	OBS-COND
Value Code	OBS-VALUE
Enabled	Checked

> **Additional Information:**   Define Tax Condition Classes for Transactions, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

To associate obsolete tax category with condition and values:
In the Associate Latin Tax Category with Conditions and Values window (Argentine (or Colombian) Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Conditions and Values), associate tax category OBS-TC with OBS-COND condition and OBS-VALUE value. Complete this step for every organization, if you are using multi-org functionality.

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Tax Category	OBS-TC
Condition Type	Transaction Condition
Condition Name	OBS-COND
Mandatory In Class	Checked
Determining Factor	Checked
Grouping Attribute	Checked
Value	OBS-VALUE
Default To Class	Checked

> **Additional Information:**   Associate Tax Categories with Tax Conditions and Values, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

To update sales orders and invoices:
Run the following scripts to fill in the Tax Code, Fiscal Classification Code, and Transaction Condition Class fields with default values for all of your order lines and invoice lines. The script populates the Tax Code field only if it is blank. Specify the value for Country Code: AR (Argentina) or CO (Colombia).

> **Note:**   The scripts in this step are potentially long-running. You should plan your upgrade schedule accordingly.

To update sales orders, run jlzztu01.sql. Use jlzztu01.lst to review the results. Enter a country code as the parameter. The scripts shown in the examples assume an Argentine setup. In that case, enter AR as the <Country Code>.

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlzztu01.sql <Country Code> \
  OBS-FISCAL OBS-TRANS_CLASS
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %JL_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlzztu01.sql <Country Code> \
  OBS-FISCAL OBS-TRANS_CLASS
```

To update invoices, run jlzztu02. Use jlzztu02.lst to review the results.

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlzztu02.sql <Country Code> \
  OBS-FISCAL OBS-TRANS_CLASS
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %JL_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlzztu02.sql <Country Code> \
  OBS-FISCAL OBS-TRANS_CLASS
```

> **Additional Information:** Entering Transactions, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*; *Oracle Financials for Argentina User's Guide*; *Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*

Step 5: Ensure that a valid inventory organization is defined for profile options (required)

Perform for this country: **Argentina, Brazil, Colombia**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **System Administrator**	Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator Guide**

Perform this step only if you *have not* applied patch 839884. This step is part of the Latin Tax Engine upgrade.

Check that a valid inventory organization is defined for the OE: Item Validation Organization and OM: Item Validation Organization profile options.

> **Additional Information:** Overview of Setting User Profiles, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 6: Manually associate tax information for each inventory organization location (required)

Perform for this country: **Brazil**	Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**
Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**	Reference manual: **Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide**

Perform this step only if you have *not* applied patch 786842 (Inventory org patch). This step is part of the Latin Tax Engine upgrade.

From the Brazilian Receivables responsibility, enter a valid value for the Organization Class field in the globalization flexfield of the Location window (Standard AR > Setup > System > Organizations > Location). Perform this step for each inventory organization location, if you are using multi-org functionality.

> **Additional Information:** Assign Tax Condition Classes to Organizations, Setting Up Globalization Flexfields, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

Step 7: Associate tax groups and tax categories (required)

Perform for this country: **Brazil**	Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**
Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**	Reference manual: **Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide**

As a part of the Latin Tax Engine upgrade, Brazilian users must perform this step if upgrading from Release 11.0 (and *have not* applied patch 839884).

From the Brazilian Receivables responsibility, use the Latin Tax Groups window (Brazilian Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Groups) to set up this association. Ensure that all tax groups have at least one tax category.

> **Additional Information:** Define Tax Group, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

Step 8: Cancel and re-enter all unapproved and unposted invoices (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Argentina, Colombia**	Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**
Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**	Reference manual: **Oracle Payables User's Guide**

Complete this step only if you *have not* installed Latin American country-specific functionality in Release 11. All invoices that were/are to be transferred from the

previous period to the new period will not have the withholding applicability or the additional information necessary for the Extended Withholding feature to function correctly. You must re-enter these invoices.

The Extended Withholding applicability takes place after you complete all the setup steps described in the Oracle Payables chapter of the *Oracle Financials for Argentina/Colombia User's Guide.*

>   **Additional Information:**   Cancelling Invoices and Entering Invoices, *Oracle Payables User's Guide*

Step 9: Archive restored technical appraisals (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Colombia**	Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**
Performed by: **Application Specialist (Assets)**	Reference manual: **Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**	

Be sure to re-archive technical appraisals that you restored in Category 1.

>   **Additional Information:**   Archiving, Purging, and Restoring Technical Appraisals, *Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*

HRMS Product Family

The following Category 5 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the HRMS product family.

Oracle Human Resources Tasks (U.S., U.K., and Japan)

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**1.**	Select legislation and college data with DataInstall (required)	Database Administrator
❏	**2.**	Run the global legislation driver (required)	Database Administrator
❏	**3.**	Run the exchange rate migration script (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Select legislation and college data with DataInstall (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Human Resources**

DataInstall is a Java utility that allows you to select the legislation for your enterprise. If you are upgrading a US or UK legislation, you can also use it to upgrade college data. To select legislations, display the main menu by typing:

```
jre oracle.apps.per.DataInstall <APPS username> <APPS password> <protocol> \
<connection>
```

where <protocol> = thin and <connection> = hostname:dport:oraclesid. For example:

```
jre oracle.apps.per.DataInstall scott tiger thin aurora.us.oracle.com:1521:orcl
```

> **Note:** In multiple sets of books installs, use the username and password of the first APPS account.

Choose option 1, Select legislative data to install or upgrade. The screen lists available country-specific financials and product combinations.

```
         DataInstall - Select Legislative Data to install/upgrade

   # Localisation      Product(s)              Legislative Data?  Action
   -- --------------   ----------------------  ----------------   -------
    1 Global           Oracle Human Resources
    2 Canada           Oracle Human Resources
    3 Canada           Oracle Payroll
    4 Japan            Oracle Human Resources
    5 Japan            Oracle Payroll
    6 United Kingdom   Oracle Human Resources
    7 United Kingdom   Oracle Payroll
    8 United States    Oracle Human Resources  Installed          Upgrade
    9 United States    Oracle Payroll          Installed          Upgrade

       <Product #><Action> - Change Action
         [I : Install, F : Force Install, U : Upgrade, C : Clear]
         [Return]     - To proceed to next step.

   Enter your choice (for example 2I) : [user choice]
```

The Action defaults to Upgrade for each product or country-specific functionality that already has legislation data in the database. This cannot be changed. You can choose any new installations that you wish to implement. For example, to install Canada Payroll, number 3, type 3I. This would also set the action on Canada Human Resources to Install as dependencies are maintained.

To correct a mistake when installing an additional legislation, use the Clear option. If you are installing an additional Payroll and HR legislation, clearing the Payroll legislation automatically clears the HR legislation. Force Install is needed only when you reapply steps in the Global Legislation Driver, and is not used for upgrades.

Select a US or UK localization and press Return. You can now select to install or upgrade the Career Management college information. If you have not chosen a US or UK localization, you are returned to the main menu.

```
                    DataInstall - College Data Option

        # Localisation   College Data?  Action
       -- -------------- ------------- --------
        1 United Kingdom
        2 United States  Installed   Upgrade

           <Product #><Action> - Change Action
                     [I : Install]
                     [F : Force Install]
                     [U : Upgrade]
                     [R : Remain]
                     [C : Clear]
              [X]          - Exit.
              [Return]     - To return to the DataInstall Main Menu

        Enter your choice (for example 1N) : [user choice]
```

The install option is available only if you have no existing college data. If you have existing data, the localization defaults to Upgrade (this can be changed). Choose Remain to keep the existing data and not apply the upgrade. Choose Clear to set the Action to Null. Do *not* use Force Upgrade as it is not a valid choice in this point.

Press Return to display the main menu. Choose option 1 to make further changes, or option 2 to exit. When you choose to exit, the final screen summarizes the actions that will be taken when the program exits, or when AdPatch is run with the Global Legislation Driver.

```
                    DataInstall - Actions summary
                -----------------------------

        The following actions will be performed:

        Localisation   Product(s)              Legislative Data?   Action
        -------------- ---------------------- ----------------   -------
        United Kingdom Oracle Human Resources                     Install
        United Kingdom Oracle Payroll                             Install
        United States  Oracle Human Resources Installed           Upgrade
        United States  Oracle Payroll         Installed           Upgrade

        Localisation   College Data? Action
        -------------- ------------- ------------
        United Kingdom               Install
        United States  Installed     Upgrade
```

If your legislation is Japan:
Run DataInstall as described for the US and UK, and select the Japanese legislation.

Step 2: Run the global legislation driver (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual:	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Human Resources**

To deliver the generic entity horizon and all the country-specific financials products selected, run AutoPatch. Answer the interactive questions. When prompted for the patch directory, specify $PER_TOP/patch/115/driver with patch driver file hrglobal.drv. NT users will specify %PER_TOP%\patch\115\driver.

After applying the global legislation driver:

Examine the following out file.

hrlegend.lst   Logs any country-specific financial products that were selected in the Java utility that have not been applied by this driver. Refer to your installation manual to ensure everything has been applied correctly or contact Oracle Support Services.

If the legislation is U.K.

Examine the following out files:

pegbutcl.lst   Logs the step that removes previously seeded user tables for the U.K. legislation before delivering the latest version. It may also show where seed data names have been changed between releases.

perleggb.lst   Logs the housekeeping step that gets rid of redundant U.K. seed data after delivery of the latest version. It also records the new balance feeds that have been inserted following an upgrade from Oracle Human Resources to Oracle HRMS.

Both files are used by Oracle Support Services to diagnose problems with seed data following an upgrade. SQL errors indicate severe problems. Keep these files for reference in the event of any future problem with U.K. seed data.

Step 3: Run the exchange rate migration script (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Human Resources**

In prior releases of HRMS, exchange rates were stored within the Oracle Payroll exchange rates table (PAY_EXCHANGE_RATES_F). To enable closer integration

with other Oracle Applications, rates are now located within the Oracle General Ledger (GL) exchange rates system.

> **Note:** You do not need to have purchased Oracle GL in order to make use of the new exchange rate entry form.

If you use exchange rates in Oracle HRMS, perform this step to migrate your existing exchange rates from Payroll into General Ledger. Run the following script:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $PAY_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pyrtmig.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %PAY_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pyrtmig.sql
```

A list of Business Groups for which exchange rates exist will be displayed. Select a Business Group to migrate and enter the ID. To exit, leave blank and press Enter. Review the list of payrolls for which exchange rates exist and select the master payroll for this Business Group. To exit, leave blank and press Enter.

An exchange rate for a given date may exist on different payrolls. This cannot be the case for GL rates. To prevent this occurrence, if a rate already exists for a given date it is overwritten by the new rate. The master payroll is the last payroll rate to be migrated so that the master rate takes precedence for a rate on a different payroll.

At the prompt, supply the Conversion Type for which rates will be created. Existing Conversion Types are displayed. You will not be able to select the standard GL types such as Corporate or Spot to ensure that rates created by other applications are not interfered with. The Conversion Type should begin with HR. An error will occur if a different prefix is selected. A new Conversion Type will be created if the supplied name does not exist.

Your selections are displayed. Enter Y to continue with the migration. A report is displayed specifying the number of rows processed. If any rows fail migration, they are displayed showing the error and rate details.

Oracle Payroll Tasks (U.S., U.K., and Japan)

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**1.**	Ensure that DataInstall has been run (required)	Database Administrator

Checklist			Performed by
❏	2.	Ensure that the global legislation driver has been run (required)	Database Administrator
❏	3.	Ensure that the exchange rate migration script has been run (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Ensure that DataInstall has been run (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Payroll**

Ensure that DataInstall has been run, as described in Oracle Human Resources, and that the appropriate legislation (U.S., U.K., or Japanese) has been selected.

Step 2: Ensure that the global legislation driver has been run (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Payroll**

Ensure that the Global Legislation driver has been run, as described in the section on Oracle Human Resources.

Step 3: Ensure that the exchange rate migration script has been run (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Payroll**

Ensure that the Exchange Rate Migration script has been run, if required.

Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family

The following Category 5 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Manufacturing and Distribution product family. Because Oracle Inventory, Oracle Cost Management, and Oracle Work in Process are closely related, the upgrade steps for these products have been combined under one heading.

Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks

Checklist			Menu Responsibility>function
❏	**1.**	Review and correct organization default accounts - INV (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory
❏	**2.**	Define profile option, if not already defined - INV (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	**3.**	Verify inventory valuation - INV (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost
❏	**4.**	Run WIP Value report (if WIP is installed) and/or inventory valuation reports (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost
❏	**5.**	Define default material subelement - Average Costing (conditionally required)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost
❏	**6.**	Define Average Rates cost type - Average Costing (conditionally required)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost

Step 1: Review and correct organization default accounts - INV (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Inventory**

Review and correct, if necessary, your organization default accounts—sales and expense. You use these default accounts when you define new items.

To review and correct your organization default accounts:
1. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose Inventory. Navigate to the Organization Parameters window (Setup > Organizations > Parameters) and select the Costing Information tabbed region.

2. Update default account information.

3. Save your work.

> **Additional Information:**   Organization Parameters Window, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*

Step 2: Define profile option, if not already defined - INV (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Inventory**

The INV:Allow Expense to Asset Transfer profile option indicates whether you can transfer an item from an expensed subinventory to an asset location.

> **Additional Information:** Oracle Inventory Profile Options, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*

1. From the System Administrator responsibility, navigate to the System Profile Values window (Profile > System).

2. Query for INV:Allow Expense to Asset Transfer and set the responsibility.

Step 3: Verify inventory valuation - INV (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Inventory**

After you have completed your inventory installation, run the same inventory valuation reports that you ran in the Category 3, Step 4 (Elemental Value, Subinventory Value, and if you use intransit, the Intransit Value). You should use the same sort options with the default Release 11*i* parameters.

The totals by subinventory, subinventory account, cost element, and report totals should match. If they do not, compare the two reports for any quantity or value differences, and proceed accordingly. Contact Oracle Support Services if you are unable to balance the Release 10 and Release 11*i* inventory valuation reports.

Step 4: Run WIP Value report (if WIP is installed) and/or inventory valuation reports (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Cost Management and/or Inventory)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Cost Management User's Guide; Oracle Inventory User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Cost Management, Inventory, or WIP**

Follow the instructions in the Category 3, Step 5 to run these reports. Compare the reports with the ones you ran in the upgrade preparation step.

Step 5: Define default material subelement - Average Costing (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory) or Application Specialist (Cost Management)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide and Oracle Cost Management User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Cost Management**

If you have defined this subelement previously, you can omit this step. If you are using Oracle Project Management, you should define the default material subelement. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose Cost. Navigate to the Material Subelements window (Setup > Subelements > Material).

> **Additional Information:** Defining Subelements, *Oracle Cost Management User's Guide*

Step 6: Define Average Rates cost type - Average Costing (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory) / Application Specialist (Cost Management)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide and Oracle Cost Management User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Cost Management**

If you have previously defined average rates cost types, you can omit this step. This cost type supports material overhead and WIP resources. To define Average Rates costs types, navigate to Setup > Cost Types.

> **Additional Information:** Defining Cost Types, *Oracle Cost Management User's Guide*

Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	**1.** Start the Planning Manager (required)	Application Specialist (Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning)

Step 1: Start the Planning Manager (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Master Scheduling/MRP / Supply Chain Planning)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP and Oracle Supply Chain Planning User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning**

The Planning Manager periodically performs many tasks that require processing rows in an interface table. These are tasks such as forecast consumption, master production schedule consumption, forecast interface load, schedule interface load, and master demand schedule relief.

1. Navigate to the Planning Manager window (Setup > Planning Manager).

2. Enter the processing interval for the Planning Manager and click Start.

During the upgrade process, all planning output data is deleted. You need to rerun your MPS, MRP, and DRP plans in order to review planning information.

> **Additional Information:** Starting the Planning Manager and Planning Manager, *Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP and Oracle Supply Chain Planning*

Oracle Order Management Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	1. Document errors that occurred during upgrade (recommended)	System Administrator / Applications Specialist (Order Management)
❏	2. Create OM profile option for the Cycles to Workflow upgrade (required)	System Administrator Applications Specialist (Order Management/Shipping)
❏	3. Set up responsibilities for order creation/manipulation (required)	Applications Specialist (Order Management/Shipping)
❏	4. Review upgraded transaction types (required)	Applications Specialist (Order Management)
❏	5. Set up processing constraints (required)	Applications Specialist (Order Management)
❏	6. Set up flexfield definitions (required)	System Administrator
❏	7. Review seeded attributes and their sequences (required)	Applications Specialist (Pricing)
❏	8. Set up pricing profiles (required)	System Administrator Applications Specialist (Pricing)

Checklist		Performed by
❏	**9.** Define pick slip grouping rules (required)	Applications Specialist (Shipping Execution)
❏	**10.** Define release sequence rules (required)	Applications Specialist (Shipping Execution)
❏	**11.** Define shipping parameters for inventory organizations (required)	Applications Specialist (Shipping Execution)
❏	**12.** Define ship methods and carrier mappings (required)	Applications Specialist (Shipping Execution)
❏	**13.** Set up shipping execution profiles and menus (required)	Applications Specialist (Shipping Execution)
❏	**14.** Set up Invoice Source and Non-delivery Invoice Source (required)	Applications Specialist (Order Management)
❏	**15.** Set up Workflow notification approver and update Workflow item attributes (required)	System Administrator Applications Specialist (Order Management)
❏	**16.** Review Shipping Execution upgrade errors (recommended)	System Administrator Applications Specialist (Shipping Execution)

Step 1: Document errors that occurred during upgrade (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator / Applications Specialist (Order Management)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Management User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Order Entry/Shipping**

You should run the following script to see if any errors occurred during the upgrade and which records were not upgraded due to errors. This report is for information only. No action is required.

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc06.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc06.sql
```

Step 2: Create OM profile option for the Cycles to Workflow upgrade (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator / Applications Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Order Entry/Shipping**

Run the loader file to create the OM:Context Responsibility for Upgraded Orders profile option. It can only be set at a responsibility level and can be used to flag a given responsibility per FND_USER/Organization combination for the cycle history upgrade. You use this profile option in other Category 5 steps to set up OM responsibilities.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/out
$ FNDLOAD <user_id>/<password>@<database_name> O Y UPLOAD \
  $FND_TOP/patch/115/import/afscprof.lct \
  $ONT_TOP/patch/115/import/US/ontpfupg.ldt PROFILE
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd $APPL_TOP/admin/out
C:\> FNDLOAD <user_id>/<password>@<database_name> O Y UPLOAD \
     C:\> FND_TOP/patch/115/import/afscprof.lct \
     C:\> ONT_TOP/patch/115/import/US/ontpfupg.ldt PROFILE
```

Step 3: Set up responsibilities for order creation/manipulation (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator / Applications Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Order Entry/Shipping**

1. Run ontupg48.sql to create a list (ontupg48.lst) of the FND_USER(created_ by)/Org combinations on all open headers and lines.

    For UNIX users:

    ```
    $ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
    $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg48.sql
    ```

    For NT users:

    ```
    C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
    C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg48.sql
    ```

2. Set up one (or more) OM (or non-OM) responsibilities for order creation/manipulation for every organization. At a minimum, set the ORG_ID(MO: Operating Unit) profile on these responsibilities (in a multi-org environment). From the System Administrator responsibility, choose Profile > System.

3. Assign appropriate responsibilities to each FND_USER based on the listing in ontupg48.lst. From the System Administrator responsibility, choose Security > User > Define. If for a given FND_USER there is more than one responsibility pointing to the same organization, set the OM:Context Responsibility for Upgraded Orders profile option (created in Step 2) on *only one* responsibility. This responsibility, the application tied to it, and the User (who created the Order or line), will be used to set application context for Upgraded Orders and Lines when they are processed in the background.

   For example: There are 4 distinct users who have access to 3 distinct operating units in which they have created orders or lines.

User ID	Name	Org ID	Organization
1894	NDSMITH	498	Vision ADB
1894	NDSMITH	204	**US** Vision Operations US
1737	ECLARKE	600	Vision Project Manufacturing
1001	VISION	204	**US** Vision Operations JS
2501	DMARTIN	600	Vision Project Manufacturing

   You would create 3 new OM or non-OM (if you plan to use a custom application on top of OM) responsibilities. Since this example is multi-org, set the MO: Operating Unit profile option to the appropriate value on each of these new responsibilities. And, set the OM:Context Responsibility for Upgraded Orders to Yes on each to flag them for use in the cycle history upgrade. Now, assign these new responsibilities appropriately to the 4 users so that they continue to have access to the same organizations that they did in the previous release. This results in only one flagged responsibility per Operating Unit for each of those 4 users. This responsibility, and the application tied to it, are used to set application context for Upgraded Orders and Lines as described previously.

4. Validate the responsibilities settings for user/org combinations created in this step by running ontupg49.sql.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg49.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg49.sql
```

If you find errors in the report (ontupg49.lst), correct the settings and re-run the script to make sure the settings are correct.

> **Attention:**   If you do not correct errors found in ontupg49.lst before you complete the next step, you will not be able to process any of the affected orders/lines in OM.

Step 4: Review upgraded transaction types (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Order Management)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Management User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Order Management**

1. Review the upgraded order and line types. Select Setup > Transaction Types > Define. Create new flow assignments since the upgraded assignments cannot be used for new orders or lines.

2. Review document sequences that were upgraded (based on order number sources in the old release). Select Setup > Documents > Define.

3. Review the document categories that were upgraded (based on order types in the old release. Select Setup > Documents > Categories.

4. Review the document sequence assignments that were upgraded (based on the order number source assignments in the old release). Select Setup > Documents > Assign.

Step 5: Set up processing constraints (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Order Management)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Management User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Order Management**

Set up processing constraints required for the OM entities since they were not included in the upgrade. Select Setup > Rules > Security > Processing Constraints.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Order Management User's Guide*

Step 6: Set up flexfield definitions (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Management User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Order Management**

The upgrade automatically moves data from descriptive flexfield segments defined in the Order Entry tables to new tables in Order Management and registers new flexfields under Order Management for the new tables. In order to use this descriptive flexfield data, you must define and enable the flexfields according to your business needs. Select Application > Flexfield > Descriptive > Segments.

Step 7: Review seeded attributes and their sequences (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Pricing)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Pricing User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Order Management**

To review seeded attributes and their sequences, select Setup > Attribute Mapping.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Pricing User's Guide*

Step 8: Set up pricing profiles (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator / Application Specialist (Pricing)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Pricing User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Order Management**

Set up any profiles you may need at the User/Responsibility/Site levels before you start using the Pricing product. From the System Administrator responsibility, select Profile > System, then select Setup > Profiles from the Pricing responsibility.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Pricing User's Guide*

Step 9: Define pick slip grouping rules (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Shipping Execution)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Order Management**

Define pick slip grouping rules to control the generation of pick slips during the Pick Release process. Select Shipping > Setup > Picking > Define Pick Slip Grouping Rules.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide*

Step 10: Define release sequence rules (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Shipping Execution)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Order Management**

Define release sequence rules to control the sequence in which allocation requests are made to the picking engine during the Pick Release process. Select Shipping > Setup > Picking > Define Release Sequence Rules.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide*

Step 11: Define shipping parameters for inventory organizations (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Shipping Execution)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Order Management**

Define shipping parameters for each inventory organization to control the overall behavior of the application within that organization. Select Shipping > Setup > Shipping Parameters.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide*

Step 12: Define ship methods and carrier mappings (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Shipping Execution)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Order Management**

Define ship method lookups in the Lookups Definitions window (Inventory > Setup > Organizations > Shipping Methods). Then map them to their respective carriers. Select Shipping > Setup > Freight > Define Carrier Ship Methods.

>   **Additional Information:**   *Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide*

Step 13: Set up shipping execution profiles and menus (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Shipping Execution)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Order Management**

During the upgrade, old profiles are made obsolete and new ones are seeded. Review the new profiles and set up appropriate values for the new Shipping Execution application. Select Shipping > Setup > Profiles.

In addition, references to the old shipping master menu are replaced with references to new menus. Review the new menu and set up comparable ones in the new Shipping Execution application.

>   **Additional Information:**   *Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide*

Step 14: Set up Invoice Source and Non-delivery Invoice Source (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Management)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Management User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Order Management**

Set up appropriate values for Invoice Source and Non-delivery Invoice Source for Invoice Interface Program. Set up the most commonly used values at the profile option level. From System Administrator responsibility, select Profile > System. Set up values at Line/Order Transaction type level for specific cases. From the Order Management responsibility, select Setup > Transaction Types > Define.

Step 15: Set up Workflow notification approver and update Workflow item attributes (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator / Applications Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Order Management User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Order Management**

Oracle Order Management converts Approval Actions to workflow Notification Activities during the upgrade. The OM:Notification approver profile option determines who receives these notifications. To set up this approval process:

- Set OM:Notification Approver

  Set the value at any level to the desired Application Responsibility or User workflow role. If Order Management cannot find a value for this profile options, it sends approval notifications to SYSADMIN.

  > **Note:** If you have multiple Operating Units, you should set this profile at a Responsibility level. This enables you to have different Approver Roles for different Operating Units, based on the responsibility you are currently assigned.

- Update Workflow Item attributes

  Run ontupg55.sql to update Workflow Item attributes. This script sets the following workflow item attributes for all open Order Headers and Lines: Responsibility ID, Application ID, Notification Approver.

  For UNIX users:

  ```
  $ cd $APPL_TOP/ont/11.5.0/patch/115/sql
  $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg55.sql
  ```

  For NT users:

  ```
  C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\ont\11.5.0\patch\115\sql
  C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg55.sql
  ```

  The Notification Approver item attribute derives its value from the profile option OM:Notification Approver. When a deferred flow is processed, the Workflow Background Engine sets the application context using the Responsibility ID, Application ID, and User ID workflow item attributes. The User ID workflow attribute value is derived from the user who created the order or line.

Step 16: Review Shipping Execution upgrade errors (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator / Applications Specialist (Shipping)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Shipping Execution**

You can run wshuplog.sql to produce a list (wshuplog.lst) of errors that occurred during the Oracle Shipping Execution upgrade. You may want to review this list following your upgrade to Release 11*i*.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $WSH_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wshuplog.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %WSH_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wshuplog.sql
```

Oracle Purchasing Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❑	1. Activate transaction managers (required)	System Administrator
❑	2. Upgrade notifications (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❑	3. Set MRP profile options (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator
❑	4. Verify and modify sourcing rules (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator / Database Administrator
❑	5. Verify date formats (required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator
❑	6. Verify RMA upgrade (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator
❑	7. Perform additional setup steps (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator

Step 1: Activate transaction managers (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Purchasing User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Purchasing**
Requires concurrent manager: **Yes**	

Activate the following transaction managers, if you haven't done so already:

PO Document Approval Manager. Processes all approval and document control actions that are called by the approval workflow in Purchasing.

> **Additional Information:** Purchase Order Approval Workflow, Requisition Approval Workflow in *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide*

Receiving Transaction Manager. Processes all receiving transactions created in any receiving window in Purchasing when you're operating in the On-line processing mode.

> **Additional Information:** Receiving Transaction Processor, *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide*

To activate transaction managers for a single operating unit in Purchasing:

1. As System Administrator, navigate to the Administer Concurrent Managers window by choosing Concurrent > Manager > Administer.

2. Choose PO Document Approval Manager and then choose Activate. Choose Receiving Transaction Manager and then choose Activate. (If you don't see an Activate button, then the transaction manager is already activated.)

> **Attention:** If you have a Multi-Org setup, then you need to set up and activate the PO Document Approval Manager and Receiving Transaction Manager for each of your operating units.

> **Additional Information:** *Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications*

Step 2: Upgrade notifications (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 Character-mode, NCA, 10SC**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Purchasing User's Guide or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Purchasing**

In Release 11, the Notifications window has been replaced by a new Notifications Summary window, and all notifications are handled by Oracle Workflow technology. Workflow uses the approval controls and hierarchies you've already defined in Purchasing to route documents for approval. Release 11*i* recognizes existing notifications only if you upgrade them to Workflow notifications.

You need to upgrade existing notifications only if you currently have documents from Release 10.7 of Purchasing pending approval..

> **Additional Information:**   Viewing and Responding to Notifications and Approval Workflows, *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide*

To upgrade notifications, you need to run the Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 process after you have set up Purchasing. This process routes existing documents that are pending approval through the new approval workflow process, so that their notifications become Workflow notifications in Release 11*i*.

Important Prerequisites

Be fore you upgrade existing notifications, be sure to:

- Reduce the number of existing notifications by responding to as many of them as you can.

- Set up Oracle Workflow, if you haven't done so already. (Although AutoUpgrade installs Workflow for you, you need to complete additional setup steps, if you have not previously done so in the Upgrade FlexBuilder step.)

  > **Additional Information:**   Setting Up Oracle Workflow, *Oracle Workflow Guide*

  Attention: If you want existing documents that are pending approval to use the Workflow options you choose in the Set Up Workflow Options step, you must set up those options before you perform the post-upgrade steps.

  Setting up Workflow includes performing workflow-related setup steps, which are described in Overview of Setting Up, *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide.* The applicable steps are: Set Up Oracle Workflow, Set Up Workflow Options, and Submit Workflow-Related Processes.

- Decide whether to customize your workflow now. This upgrade updates your notifications by routing them through whatever workflows you have now—for example, the default workflows included with this release of Oracle Purchasing. In general, only those documents that are submitted for approval *after* you customize an approval workflow are affected by that customized workflow. So, if you want your existing notifications to be routed according to your

customized workflow rather than the one that comes with this release of Purchasing, customize and test it before you perform these upgrade steps.

To upgrade your existing notifications to Workflow notifications:
Complete the following steps for each operating unit.

1. Navigate to the Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 process (Purchasing > Reports > Run)

2. In the Requests window, select Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 in the Request Name field and choose Submit Request.

3. After the process is complete (when it has changed from Pending to Completed in the Requests window), select it in the Requests window and choose View Output to see if any errors occurred during the upgrade.

   If you receive errors about Workflow not being set up properly, see the *Oracle Workflow Guide* for instructions on the proper setup of Oracle Workflow.

4. Ask document preparers and approvers to monitor the progress of their upgraded notifications in the Notifications Summary window and take action as necessary, in case errors were encountered during the upgrade.

   The Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 process submits your existing notifications to the approval workflow process in Purchasing. If Workflow itself encounters errors during this upgrade process, it notifies the appropriate people (buyers, requisition preparers, or approvers) in the Notifications Summary window. For example, if there was a problem with the PO Document Approval Manager, Workflow notifies the appropriate person.

5. After all your notifications have been upgraded, you may want to disable the Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 process so that no one tries to use it later.

   In the System Administrator responsibility, you disable concurrent programs in the Concurrent Programs window by deselecting the Enabled check box.

   > **Additional Information:**   Concurrent Programs Window, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 3: Set MRP profile options (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 Character-mode**	Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Purchasing**

Since you could not upgrade Autosource rules for a character-based system as a pre-upgrade step, go back and do it now. (See Purchasing Tasks in Chapter 4). Values for both profile options described in the pre-upgrade step are required for the next step.

Step 4: Verify and modify sourcing rules (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 Character-mode, NCA, 10SC**	Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administration /Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Purchasing**

If you did not use AutoSource Rules in Release 10.7, you can omit this step.

In previous releases, you used the AutoSource Rules window to enter sources for the items you purchase. In this release, AutoUpgrade converted all your existing AutoSource rules to the enhanced sourcing rules and Approved Supplier List (ASL) entries. Specifically, it performed the following upgrades:

- Created sourcing rule entries in the Sourcing Rule window in Purchasing, using the percentage splits you defined in the AutoSource Rules window in previous releases.

- Created global ASL entries, using your previous AutoSource rules.

- Assigned a supplier status of New to all your suppliers in the Approved Supplier List window.

- Upgraded source documents with current effective dates as well as dates that don't become effective until a future date.

To verify or modify sourcing rules:
1. In the following directory, use any text editor to check the upgrade.out file for errors that might have occurred during the AutoUpgrade process:

   For UNIX users:

   ```
   $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out
   ```

   where <dbname> is the value of your $ORACLE_SID or $TWO_TASK.

   For NT users:

   ```
   C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out
   ```

   where <dbname> is the value of your ORACLE_SID or LOCAL.

If errors appear in this file, fix them as described. If you get an error that an MRP profile option was not properly set, you may need to provide a value, as described in Step Set MRP Profile Options step (Purchasing, Category 3).

2. If there are errors in the upgrade.out file, run the ASL Upgrade process in Purchasing after you have fixed the errors. If there are no errors, proceed to the next step.

If you are upgrading from Release 10.7 character-mode:
AutoUpgrade does record an error in the upgrade.out file, and you *must* run the ASL Upgrade Process because in Release 10.7 character-mode, the MRP profile options could not be set until after the upgrade. As a result, AutoUpgrade could not upgrade your AutoSource rules. The ASL Upgrade process performs the same upgrade of your AutoSource rules as AutoUpgrade did, or attempted to do.

3. In the Purchasing responsibility, navigate to Reports > Run and select ASL Upgrade in the Request Name field. In the Parameters window that appears, enter a Supplier Status of New and an Upgrade Documents From option of Current and future rules. Then submit the request. *New* and *Current and future rules* are the only options supported by the ASL Upgrade process.

4. To verify once more that your AutoSource rules have been upgraded, open the Requisitions window in Purchasing and, in the Item field, enter an item number that previously had an AutoSource rule. Then navigate to the Source Details tabbed region. If the correct Document Type, Document, Supplier and supplier Site appear as defaults, then your AutoSource rules have been successfully updated to the enhanced sourcing rules and ASL entries.

5. Once you are satisfied that your AutoSource rules have been upgraded, you may want to disable the ASL Upgrade process so that no one tries to use it later. In the System Administrator responsibility, you disable concurrent programs in the Concurrent Programs window by deselecting the Enabled check box.

> **Additional Information:** Concurrent Programs Window, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

6. To make any changes, additions, or enhancements to your sourcing rules and ASL entries, use the Purchasing responsibility to navigate to the Define Supplier Statuses, Approved Supplier List, Sourcing Rule, and Sourcing Rule/Bill of Distribution Assignments windows.

> **Additional Information:** Setting Up Automatic Sourcing, *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide*

Step 5: Verify date formats (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administration**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Purchasing**

In the upgrade to Release 11*i*, the REVISED_DATE column in the Purchasing tables was changed from a Varchar2 to a Date format. The upgrade script removes your existing date information from the REVISED_DATE column in the affected tables, places this information in a temporary table TEMP_REVISED_DATE while it converts the column to a Date format, then copies your original dates from TEMP_REVISED_DATE back into the affected tables. The TEMP_REVISED DATE table still contains your original data as a backup. Before you run podold.sql (see the Finishing Your Upgrade chapter), which drops unneeded database objects including the TEMP_REVISED_DATE table, make sure your dates look OK.

To verify your dates, run pockrvdt.sql:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PO_TOP/admin/sql/pockrvdt.sql \
  <PO username> <PO password>
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %APP:_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%PO_TOP%\admin\sql\pockrvdt.sql \
  <PO username> <PO password>
```

In the $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out directory, view the following files. NT users will find the files in %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out:

```
po_headers_all.lst
po_headers_archive_all.lst
po_releases_all.lst
po_releases_archive_all.lst
```

Each file displays the format (also called data type) of the REVISED_DATE column and a list of your dates in the affected table. In each file, check that the *data type* of REVISED_DATE is Date and that the dates themselves look OK. Contact Oracle Support if you identify any problems.

Step 6: Verify RMA upgrade (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administration**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Receiving**

If you are using Order Management for the first time, this step does not apply.

In Release 11*i*, you receive returns from customers in Purchasing rather than in Inventory. During the upgrade, all completed and pending receipt transactions created against customer returns in your previous release are transferred automatically from Inventory to Purchasing. The upgrade also transfers all expected customer returns so that they are visible in the Find Expected Receipts window in Purchasing.

Before the upgrade (in Inventory):
Every RMA line that you can receive against Inventory has a corresponding row in the MTL_SO_RMA_INTERFACE table. For example, the table might contain this receipt information for RMA 6357:

RMA_INTERFACE_ID	RMA_NUMBER	QUANTITY (on RMA line)	RECEIVED_ QUANTITY	DELIVERED_ QUANTITY	I
270	6357	10	7	6	N

The I in the last column stands for Inspection. In this example, it is N for No inspection required.

For every row, there are multiple rows in the MTL_SO_RMA_RECEIPTS table that reflect all transactions performed against that RMA line. In Inventory, this table shows the following received and accepted quantities for the RMA 6357 example:

RECEIVED_QUANTITY	ACCEPTED_QUANTITY	Transaction
10	10	Received and delivered to inventory.
-5	-5	Returned to customer from inventory
1	1	Received and delivered to inventory
2	0	Received (into inspection) but not yet delivered
-1	0	Returned to customer from receiving (inspection)

RMA 6357 has 10 items. Of this total, 7 were received, 6 of those 7 were delivered, 1 of the 7 is still on the receiving dock, and the remaining 3 of the original 10 are still to be received.

After the upgrade (in Purchasing):
The following receiving transactions for our example are created in Purchasing:

- A single receipt for a quantity of 13 (total received quantity = 10 + 1 + 2)

- A deliver transaction for 10 against this receipt

- A Return to Customer transaction (returned from inventory) for 5 against this delivery

- Another deliver transaction for 1 against this receipt

- A Return to Customer transaction (returned from receiving) for 1 against this receipt

The upgrade creates a receiving supply of 1 for the 1 item still on the receiving dock. In Purchasing, you can deliver, return, or inspect this item. The upgrade also creates 3 expected receipts for the 3 not yet received. These receipts are available in the Find Expected Receipts window in Purchasing.

To verify that the RMA upgrade was successful:
If you used return material authorizations (RMAs) in your previous release to authorize and receive customers returns using Oracle Order Entry and Oracle Inventory, complete these steps to verify your RMA upgrade:

1. Check the following tables (automatically generated during the upgrade):

- RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_SUCCESS: successfully processed transactions

- RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_ERRORS: transactions that were not upgraded due to errors

The upgrade continues to transfer the RMA receipt data from Inventory to Purchasing even if there is an error. It logs the error and continues upgrading the rest of the transactions.

> **Note:** If the RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_ERRORS table or the RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_SUCCESS table already exists (for example, if you re-ran the upgrade), the upgrade script assumes it is being re-run and processes only transactions with errors from the RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_ERRORS table.

The RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_ERRORS table contains the following information:

- CREATION_DATE (DATE) — Date the record was created

- RUN_MODE (VARCHAR2) — Indicator of whether the error was logged the first time the upgrade occurred (FIRST-RUN) or the subsequent time the upgrade occurred (RE-RUN)

- RMA_INTERFACE_ID (NUMBER) — Internal unique interface identifier from the MTL_SO_RMA_INTERFACE table

- ERR_NUMBER (NUMBER)

- ERR_MESSAGE (VARCHAR2)

The RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_SUCCESS table contains the following information:

- CREATION_DATE (DATE)

- RUN_MODE (VARCHAR2)

- RMA_INTERFACE_ID NUMBER)

- SHIPMENT_HEADER_ID (NUMBER) — Shipment header identifier of the transaction generated in the Purchasing receiving tables

2. Fix any errors are listed RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_ERRORS, and re-run the RMA upgrade script.

   For UNIX users:

   ```
   $ cd $PO_TOP/patch/115/sql
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @rcvrmaup.sql
   ```

   For NT users:

   ```
   C:\> cd %PO_TOP%\patch\115\sql
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @rcvrmaup.sql
   ```

   You can ignore errors involving data that is old or obsolete.

Step 7: Perform additional setup steps (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Purchasing User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Purchasing**

Perform additional setup steps as listed in Overview of Setting Up, *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 11i.* New setup steps between Release 10.7 and 11.0 include:

- Set Up Oracle Workflow. See Setting up Oracle Workflow, *Oracle Workflow Guide.*

- Submit Workflow-related Processes — Send Notifications for Purchasing Documents Process and Workflow Background Engine. The Send Notifications process looks for documents that are incomplete, rejected, or in need of reapproval and sends status notifications to the appropriate people. In the Submit Requests window, navigate to Send Notifications for Purchasing Documents > Schedule and specify how frequently you want the process to run. Choose Submit Request. See Send Notifications for Purchasing Documents, *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide.*

  For information on submitting the Workflow Background Engine, see Choosing Workflow Options, *Oracle Purchasing (or Public Sector Purchasing) User's Guide.*

- Set Up Workflow Options. See Choosing Workflow Options, *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide.*

New or changed setup steps between Release 11 and Release 11*i*, as listed in the Overview of Setting Up section in the *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 11i* include:

New or Changed	Setup Step in User's Guide	Change
Changed	Define Manufacturing System and User Profiles (Required)	Some new features in Release 11i have new, optional profile options whose default values you may want to consider or change.
Changed	Define Tax Codes (Optional)	You can additionally define tax recovery rules during your tax setup.
Changed	Set Up Approval Information (Required)	If you use offline approvers, designate proxy approvers for them.
Changed	Define Suppliers (Required)	The Invoice Match Option optional field has been added to the Supplier Sites window to let you choose whether the Invoice Match Option on purchase order shipments defaults to Receipt (Payables must match invoices to the receipt) or Purchase Order (Payables must match invoices to the purchase order).
		AutoUpgrade sets the Invoice Match Option to Purchase Order on all purchase order shipments that were in your system when you upgraded. You can update the Invoice Match Option on all shipments that have not yet been received.
Changed	Set Up Automatic Sourcing (Optional)	Both the functionality and documentation for automatic sourcing has been enhanced.

> **Additional Information:** Oracle Purchasing, *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*

Public Sector Product Family

The following Category 5 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Public Sector product family.

Oracle Labor Distribution Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❑	**1.** Upgrade Labor Distribution and remove obsolete objects (required)	Application Specialist

Step 1: Upgrade Labor Distribution and remove obsolete objects (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Labor Distribution**
Requires concurrent manager: **Yes**	

To upgrade Oracle Labor Distribution:
Run the following SQL*Plus script. When prompted by the upgrade program, the following considerations apply:

- The script can only be run once successfully. If the script fails, however, it can be run multiple times until it succeeds.

- The script prompts for user confirmation before starting.

- You can exit from the script by entering <CTRL-C>.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $PSP_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pspup115.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %PSP_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pspup115.sql
```

If the script runs successfully, the following message appears and is written to the log file:

```
Upgrade program completed successfully
```

If the program does not complete successfully, an error message appears on the screen and is written to the log file. If an error message appears, review the log file to find the cause of failure, fix the error, and restart the script. The program continues from the point where it registered an error. Repeat the preceding process until following message appears on the screen and is written to the log file:

```
Upgrade program completed successfully
```

To remove all obsolete objects:
Run the following SQL*Plus script:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $PSP_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @psprmobs.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %PSP_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @psprmobs.sql
```

If the script runs successfully, a message appears on the screen and is written to the log file indicating that the objects were successfully obsoleted.

If the program does not complete successfully, an error message appears on the screen and is written to the psprmobs.lst log file. Review the log file to find the cause of failure, fix the error, and restart the script. Repeat the preceding process until the program completes successfully.

7

Category 6 — Before Using Product Features

This chapter describes the upgrade finishing steps (also known as post-upgrade steps) that must be run before you begin to use some of the individual features of your Oracle Applications products. We refer to these steps as Category 6 — users can sign on to the affected product, but they cannot use a particular feature until you complete the appropriate steps. The feature(s) affected are listed in the summary lines following each step. You will perform Category 6 steps for the following products.

Applications Technology Products

Because they affect all Oracle applications, you will begin with the upgrade steps for System Administration and Application Object Library.

System Administration Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**1.**	Set up report security groups (conditionally recommended)	System Administrator
❏	**2.**	Upgrade accounting calendar (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Set up report security groups (conditionally recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Reports**

Oracle Applications uses Standard Report Submission to launch most reports. You can create report security groups to provide access to only those reports that each responsibility needs. The All Reports standard security group lists all reports.

> **Additional Information:**   Organizing Programs into Request Groups, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Alternatively, you can create custom report security groups to provide access to custom reports only for a specific responsibility. For example, to add customized reports for Receivables, you would enter them in the Receivables All request security group through the Submit Requests window.

Step 2: Upgrade accounting calendar (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Accounting Calendar**

If you set up your accounting calendar for any Oracle Applications product in a previous release and you wish to use the same accounting calendar(s) for a newly

installed product(s), you must copy your calendar information for each new product. The products that use the accounting calendar and their IDs are as follows.

Oracle Applications Product	Product ID
Global Accounting Engine (AX)	600
Oracle Alert (ALR)	160
Oracle Assets (FA)	140
Oracle Bills of Material (BOM)	702
Oracle Financials for Europe (JE)	7002
Oracle General Ledger (GL)	101
Oracle Human Resources (PER)	800
Oracle Inventory (INV)	401
Oracle Order Entry (OE)*	300
Oracle Payables (AP)	200
Oracle Projects (PA)	275
Oracle Purchasing (PO)	201
Oracle Receivables (AR)	222
Oracle Sales Compensation (CN)*	283
* Order Entry and Sales Compensation also use the accounting calendar.	

To upgrade your accounting calendar, complete the following steps:

1. Copy your calendar information.You can find the exact name of your set of books by moving to the Define window.

2. Run the following script, using the variables outlined in the following table.

When SQL*Plus prompts for...	do this...
NEW_PRODUCT_ID	Enter the value for your new product. For example, for Oracle Payables enter 200, for Oracle Purchasing enter 201.
INSTALLED_PRODUCT_ID	Enter the value 101 to copy the Oracle General Ledger accounting calendar.

When SQL*Plus prompts for...	do this...
SET_OF_BOOKS_NAME	Enter the full name of the set of books using the accounting calendar. For example, Fremont Manufacturing.

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $GL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glips.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> %GL_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glips.sql
```

3. Repeat these steps for each new Oracle Applications product for which you wish to copy an existing accounting calendar.

Application Object Library Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	1.	Update custom code using flexfield values in FND_LOOKUPS (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❏	2.	Update custom calls to FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXT_TL (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❏	3.	Rename the srw directory to reports for custom applications (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❏	4.	Copy custom forms libraries to AU_TOP (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❏	5.	Copy custom .fmb files to the AU_TOP (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❏	6.	Convert character-mode messages to GUI for custom applications (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❏	7.	Regenerate, recompile, and re-link custom concurrent program libraries (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Update custom code using flexfield values in FND_LOOKUPS (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Custom Flexfields-related code**

Oracle Applications has replaced lowercase flexfield-related lookup codes in FND_ LOOKUPS (and in the related flexfields columns in AOL tables) with new uppercase codes. These changes are applied automatically during the upgrade process. If you have customizations that use these lookup codes from FND_ LOOKUPS or from the flexfield tables directly), you need to change your customizations to use these new values.

The following table shows the LOOKUP_TYPE used in FND_LOOKUPS, the corresponding flexfields table and columns that use the changed value, the old lookup value used in FND_LOOKUPS and the flexfield table, and the new value. You should evaluate your custom code (scripts, APIs, reports, and so on) to assess whether your code uses these values from either FND_LOOKUPS or the flexfield tables and modify it accordingly.

Lookup Type	Table Name	Column	Old Value	New Value
FLEX_VALIDATION_EVENTS	FND_FLEX_VALIDATION_EVENTS	EVENT_CODE	e	O
FIELD_TYPE	FND_FLEX_VALUE_SETS	FORMAT_TYPE	t	I
FLEX_DEFAULT_TYPE	FND_ID_FLEX_SEGMENTS	DEFAULT_TYPE	s	A
FLEX_DEFAULT_TYPE	FND_DESCR_FLEX_COLUMN_USAGES	DEFAULT_TYPE	s	A

Step 2: Update custom calls to FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXT_TL (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual**	Do before anyone uses: **Custom flexfields-related code**

In Release 11, Oracle Applications added a NAME column to the FND_DESCR_ FLEX_CONTEXT_TL table to aid in the translation of context field values for descriptive flexfields. AutoUpgrade populates this column based on the codes in FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXT. You will need to modify any custom code (scripts, APIs, reports, and so on) that accesses FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXT_TL or FND_ DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXT tables to account for this new column and its values, as appropriate.

Step 3: Rename the srw directory to reports for custom applications (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Your custom application**

Because of the change in reports products used in Oracle Applications, you should change the name of the srw directory to reports for each custom application.

Step 4: Copy custom forms libraries to AU_TOP (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 or 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Custom applications**

Perform this step only if you have created custom forms libraries for use with Oracle Applications. Copy your custom forms libraries (.pll) to the resource directory under AU_TOP. You must complete this step before you regenerate your custom forms.

Step 5: Copy custom .fmb files to the AU_TOP (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 or 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Custom applications**

Put copies of your custom .fmb files in the <language> subdirectory under the forms directory of your AU_TOP. You should keep the original copies of your forms in your the <language> subdirectory under the forms directory of your <custom>_ TOP since any files in AU_TOP may be overwritten when you upgrade to the next release.

Step 6: Convert character-mode messages to GUI for custom applications (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	Do this before anyone uses: **Custom applications**

If have defined custom Message Dictionary messages using a custom application name in the character-mode Define Messages form (because your character-mode custom applications use Message Dictionary), you must convert them to GUI format to continue using messages in Release 11*i*-compatible code.

The FNDMDCVT program copies all of the messages for the application in the FND_MESSAGES table, concatenates the extended message text on the message text, and removes the special formatting codes in the old messages to produce plain text. It then inserts the new messages into the FND_NEW_MESSAGES table. If a message with that name, language, and application already exists in the FND_

NEW_MESSAGES table, the insert fails and the previously existing row is left alone. Only U.S. language messages are transferred by this converter.

To convert your messages, follow these steps:

1. Make sure that FND_TOP/bin is in your path.

2. Run the FNDMDCVT program from the operating system prompt:

   For UNIX users:

   ```
   $ FNDMDCVT <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y <APPL_SHORT_NAME>
   ```

   For NT users:

   ```
   C:\> FNDMDCVT <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y <APPL_SHORT_NAME>
   ```

   where APPL_SHORT_NAME is the application short name for which you want messages converted. Run this script once for each custom application at your site.

3. From the Application Developer responsibility, navigate to Application > Messages. Query the messages for your application and verify that they were converted successfully. Adjust any special formatting, as necessary. For example, old formatting text that was not entered correctly may remain and should be deleted.

4. To generate the Message Dictionary runtime message file, run FNDMDGEN for each custom application. From the operating system prompt, type:

   For UNIX users:

   ```
   $ FNDMDGEN <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y <LANG_SHORT_NAME> \
     <APPL_SHORT_NAME> DB_TO_RUNTIME
   ```

   For NT users:

   ```
   C:\> FNDMDGEN <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y <LANG_SHORT_NAME> \
     <APPL_SHORT_NAME> DB_TO_RUNTIME
   ```

   where LANG_SHORT_NAME is the language short name (such as US) and APPL_SHORT_NAME is the application short name for which you want the message file generated.

Step 7: Regenerate, recompile, and re-link custom concurrent program libraries (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 or 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**	Do this before anyone uses: **Custom concurrent program libraries**

As a result of a change in the way that concurrent program libraries are constructed, you will need to regenerate, recompile, and re-link your customized concurrent program libraries.

1. From the Application Developer responsibility, navigate to the Concurrent Program Libraries form (Concurrent > Library).

2. Query your custom library and press Generate.

    This submits a concurrent request that will create a file named <libraryname>.c in the lib directory under the application product tree to which the program library belongs. For example, library CUSTLIBR, a custom program (CUSTLIBR.c) registered under application Custom Application with a basepath XXCST_TOP, will be generated in the lib directory under XXCST_TOP.

3. Compile the file using $FND_TOP/usrxit/Makefile and relink using adrelink. NT users compile using %FND_TOP%\usrxit\Makefile and adrelink.

    > **Additional Information:** Concurrent Programs, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

4. Place the executable in the /bin directory for the appropriate product.

    > **Additional Information:** *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Oracle Alert Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	1.	Associate organization names to pre-existing custom Alert definitions (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	2.	Disable and re-enable all custom alerts to re-create triggers (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Associate organization names to pre-existing custom Alert definitions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Alert)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Alert User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Alert definition**

If you have custom alerts defined in Release 10.7 that you want to assign to a particular organization, you must manually update the alert.

1. As the Alerts Manager, navigate to the Alerts form (Alert > Define) and query the definition.

2. Choose Alert Details, then display the Installations alternative region in the Alert Details window.

3. Enter the ORACLE ID and organization name that you want to run this alert against.

4. Make sure you check Enabled before you save your changes and close the window.

Step 2: Disable and re-enable all custom alerts to re-create triggers (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Custom Alerts**

Re-create event alert database triggers that dropped to prepare for the upgrade.

Oracle Common Modules Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❑	**1.**	Upload and back up customized data for non-Global Demo databases (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Upload and back up customized data for non-Global Demo databases (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10SC Production 16 (or higher), 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Custom Common Modules features**

During the upgrade process, all customized data will be automatically downloaded for you, provided you have completed all the pre-upgrade steps successfully. Once the upgrade is complete, you can use AKLOAD to upload (restore) your customized data. Ensure that your java environment is set up correctly before running the program. For example, make sure your CLASSPATH is set correctly, and so on.

If you are upgrading a non-Global Demo database from Production 16 (or higher) or a non-Vision Demo database from Release 11.0:

1. Run the following Java commands to upload customized data. First change directory to the following:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out
```

Then enter the following commands:

```
jre oracle.apps.ak.akload <APPS username> <APPS password> THIN "(DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcp) \
(HOST=<hostname>)(PORT=<port#>))(CONNECT_DATA=(SID=<$ORACLE_SID>)))" UPLOAD akcattr.jlt NOUPDATE $NLS_LANG
jre oracle.apps.ak.akload <APPS username> <APPS password> THIN "(DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcp) \
(HOST=<hostname>)(PORT=<port#>))(CONNECT_DATA=(SID=<$ORACLE_SID>)))" UPLOAD akcobj.jlt NOUPDATE $NLS_LANG
jre oracle.apps.ak.akload <APPS username> <APPS password> THIN "(DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcp) \
(HOST=<hostname>)(PORT=<port#>))(CONNECT_DATA=(SID=<$ORACLE_SID>)))" UPLOAD akcreg.jlt NOUPDATE $NLS_LANG
jre oracle.apps.ak.akload <APPS username> <APPS password> THIN "(DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcp) \
(HOST=<hostname>)(PORT=<port#>))(CONNECT_DATA=(SID=<$ORACLE_SID>)))" UPLOAD akcflow.jlt NOUPDATE $NLS_LANG
jre oracle.apps.ak.akload <APPS username> <APPS password> THIN "(DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcp) \
(HOST=<hostname>)(PORT=<port#>))(CONNECT_DATA=(SID=<$ORACLE_SID>)))" UPLOAD akcsec.jlt NOUPDATE $NLS_LANG
```

2. Back up output files from Java program

Make a backup copy of akcattr.jlt, akcobj.jlt, akcreg.jlt, akcflow.jlt, and akcsec.jlt from the previous step. These files contain your customized AK data. Without them, you will have no record of your customizations of AK tables.

Financials Product Family

The following Category 6 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Financials product family.

Oracle Cash Management Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	1. Reinstall customized Reconciliation Open Interface objects (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❏	2. Prepare Cash Management for Payroll Reconciliation (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Reinstall customized Reconciliation Open Interface objects (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **Oracle Cash Management User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Reconciliation Open Interface**

This step is required only if you have implemented the Reconciliation Open Interface.

AutoUpgrade replaced your customized versions of the Reconciliation Open Interface objects with the default ones provided by Oracle Cash Management. You must reinstall the customized copies of these objects (which you backed up in the pre-upgrade steps) to your database in your APPS account: CE_999_INTERFACE_V (view), and CE_999_PKG (package).

Step 2: Prepare Cash Management for Payroll Reconciliation (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Payroll Reconciliation**

This step is required only if you want to reconcile payroll payments through Cash Management. Run the Payroll Bank Account upgrade script to prepare Cash Management for reconciliation of payroll payments. It populates the AP_BANK_ ACCOUNTS_ALL table with information from PAY_EXTERNAL_ACCOUNTS.

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $PAY_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pypopapb.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %PAY_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pypopapb.sql
```

Oracle General Ledger Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❑	**1.**	Preserve GL account combinations affected by the Segment Value Inheritance program (required)	Application Specialist (GL)

Checklist			Performed by
❏	2.	Ensure that account segment values use correct account type (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
❏	3.	Review period rates (conditionally required)	Database Administrator / Application Specialist (GL)
❏	4.	Define Owners' Equity Translation Rule profile option (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (GL)
❏	5.	Define income statement accounts revaluation profile option (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (GL)
❏	6.	Review AutoPost criteria (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (GL)
❏	7.	Define GIS conversion rates and rate types (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (GL)
❏	8.	Verify program submission parameters for mass funds check/reservation (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (GL)
❏	9.	Set function security for journal posting and reversing functions (recommended)	System Administrator / Application Specialist (GL)
❏	10.	Define Daily Rates profile option (recommended)	Application Specialist (GL)
❏	11.	Set up intercompany balancing (recommended)	Application Specialist (GL)
❏	12.	Define new consolidation mapping rules (recommended)	Application Specialist (GL)
❏	13.	Review concurrent program controls (recommended)	Application Specialist (GL)
❏	14.	Define Archive and Purge profile option (recommended)	Database Administrator / Application Specialist (GL)
❏	15.	Define GL Summarization profile options (recommended)	Application Specialist (GL)

Step 1: Preserve GL account combinations affected by the Segment Value Inheritance program (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL)**
Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Segment Value Inheritance program**

You can automatically replicate any changes you make to segment value attributes, such as Detailed Posting, Detailed Budgeting, Effective Date Ranges, and the Enabled flag, to all account combinations that contain that segment value by running the Segment Value Inheritance program. For example, if you disable a

particular cost center in your chart of accounts, you can optionally require that all account combinations that contain that cost center are also automatically disabled.

If you want to protect specific account combinations from being affected by this program, follow these steps:

1. In the GL Accounts window (Setup > Accounts > Combinations), find the account combinations that you want to preserve.

2. Select the Preserved check box for all combinations that you want to save.

3. Save your work.

Step 2: Ensure that account segment values use correct account type (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Database Administrator/Application Specialist (GL)**
Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Summary Accounts, Financial Analyzer Integration**

> **Attention:** This step is *required* if you use summary accounts in General Ledger *and* use Oracle Financial Analyzer to analyze your General Ledger account information. This step is *highly recommended* if you use summary accounts but not Financial Analyzer.

In Release 10.7 (and earlier), the natural account type for summary accounts was automatically set to Owners' Equity. In Release 11 and 11*i*, summary accounts inherit the account type of their account segment value. As a result, you must ensure that all the account segment values—even parent values—have the correct account type. Otherwise, your summary accounts will be incorrectly classified.

For example, if you define a parent account value, 1999, that is the total of all your asset accounts, the account type for the parent segment value 1999 should be set to Asset. When you subsequently define a summary account using this segment value, the summary account will be correctly defined as an asset.

> **Note:** If the parent segment value is T, account type is not meaningful and does not need to be changed. If you use dependent account segments and have difficulty completing this step, contact Oracle Support.

Correctly setting the account type for your account segment values ensures that your summary balances are displayed correctly if you choose to perform additional analysis using Oracle Financial Analyzer. To ensure that account segment values use the correct account type, complete the following steps. The last step propagates the changes you made to Oracle General Ledger.

1. In the Key Flexfields Segments window (Setup > Financials > Flexfields > Key > Segments), unfreeze all account structures that reference your account segment.

2. In the Value Sets window (Setup > Financials > Flexfields > Validation Sets), query the value set Name for your natural account segment. Optionally, query the segment values that you use for your summary accounts. When you have entered your query values, choose Find. The Segment Values window appears.

3. Choose Hierarchy, Qualifiers from the pop list.

4. For each account segment value you use in your summary accounts, open the Segment Qualifiers window and review the setting for Account Type.

5. If the account type is wrong, change it.

6. When you have reviewed and changed your account types, save your work.

7. Use the Key Flexfields Segments window to refreeze all account structures that reference your account segment.

8. Run the following SQL*Plus script to propagate the changes you made in Oracle Applications to Oracle General Ledger:

   For UNIX users:

   ```
   $ cd $GL_TOP/admin/sql
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gluacsum.sql
   ```

   For NT users:

   ```
   C:\> cd %GL_TOP%\admin\sql
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gluacsum.sql
   ```

Step 3: Review period rates (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 or 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL)**
Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Period Rates**

> **Attention:** You do not need to perform this step if you have applied the mini-packs for Release 11.02 or 11.03.

Run the Maintain Euro Period Rates program for any set of books that satisfies *both* of the following criteria:

■ The set of book's functional currency is the Euro or a currency participating in the Economic and Monetary Union, or period rates have been entered between the set of book's functional currency and the Euro.

■ The period containing January 1, 1999 is open or future enterable for that set of books, or the budget year containing January 1, 1999 is open for a budget in that set of books.

For each set of books that satisfies *both* criteria, run the Maintain Euro Period Rates program from as follows. You run this program from the General Ledger responsibility for the specific set of books.

1. Navigate to Reports > Request > Standard.

2. Choose to submit a single request.

3. Select Program - Maintain Euro Period Rates and click Submit.

Step 4: Define Owners' Equity Translation Rule profile option (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL) / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Translation**

Prior to Release 11, the Translation feature used two translation rules, according to the account type being translated. Assets, liabilities, and owner's equity account

types always used the Year-to-Date rule and revenue and expense accounts always used the Period-to-Date rule:

Account Type	Translation Rule
Assets, Liabilities, and Owners' Equity	Year-to-Date (YTD) Rule: $\text{YTD}_{(xlt)} = \text{Rate X YTD}_{(func)}$ where (xlt) = translated currency $(func)$ = functional currency
Revenue and Expense	Period-to-Date (PTD) Rule: $\text{PTD}_{(xlt)} = \text{Rate X PTD}_{(func)}$

Beginning with Release 11, you can choose whether to use the Year-to-Date or Period-to-Date rule to translate owners' equity. Review the profile option GL:Owners Equity Translation Rule to make sure the setting reflects the translation method your organization uses to translate owners' equity:

PTD   Owners' equity is translated using the Period-to-Date rule. This is the default.

YTD   Owners' equity is translated using the Year-to-Date rule. This selection is the same as the Release 10.7 translation behavior.

Note: Owners' Equity accounts are translated using historical rates. If you do not maintain historical rates in your set of books, General Ledger will create them for each period for which you translate your owners' equity accounts, using:

- Period average rates, if you use the PTD rule.

- Period end rates, if you use the YTD rule.

If you select PTD, owners' equity will be translated using the Period-to-Date rule for any new translations.

WARNING: **Previously translated owners' equity balances will not change.**

If you want to restate your previously translated owners' equity balances using the Period-to-Date rule, follow these steps:

1. Purge the old translated balances for each period to be restated.

2. Change the GL:Owners Equity Translation Rule profile option to PTD.

3. For each period to be restated, use the Historical Rates window (Setup > Currencies > Rates > Historical) to delete the rates used to translate owners' equity accounts, as follows:

   - Retained Earnings: Delete any non-historical rates.

   - Other Owners' Equity accounts: Delete any period rates.

4. Run translation. Your owners' equity balances will be translated using the Period-to-Date rule.

   Additional Information: Setting General Ledger Profile Options, Purging Archived Account Balances and Journals in *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*

Step 5: Define income statement accounts revaluation profile option (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 or 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL) / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Revaluation**

In previous releases, the General Ledger's Revaluation feature always used the Year-to-Date rule when revaluing income statement accounts. Now, you can choose whether to use the Year-to-Date or Period-to-Date rule to revalue income statement account balances.

Account Type	Translation Rule
Assets, Liabilities, Owners' Equity, Revenue, and Expense	Year-to-Date (YTD) Rule: $YTD_{(xlt)} = YTD_{(func)} \times Rate$ where $(xlt) =$ revalued currency $(func) =$ functional currency
Revenue and Expense	Period-to-Date (PTD) Rule: $PTD_{(xlt)} = PTD_{(func)} \times Rate$

Review the profile option GL: Income Statement Accounts Revaluation Rule to make sure the setting reflects the revaluation method your organization uses to revalue income statement accounts.

PTD   Revenue and expense account types are revalued using the Period-To-Date rule.

YTD   Revenue and expense account types are revalued using the Year-To-Date rule. This is the default. This selection is the same revaluation behavior from Release 11 and prior.

If you select PTD, revenue and expense account balances will be revalued using the Period-to-Date rule for any new revaluations.

> **WARNING:** **Previously translated owners' equity balances will not change.**

If you want to restate previously revalued income statement balances from prior periods, simply re-run Revaluation for that period after setting the profile option.

> **Additional Information:** Setting General Ledger Profile Options, Purging Archived Account Balances and Journals in *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*

Step 6: Review AutoPost criteria (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL)**
Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **AutoPost**

> **Attention:** Perform this step only if you have previously defined and used AutoPost criteria in Release 10.7.

When you upgrade to Release 11*i*, any Release 10.7 AutoPost criteria you have defined are grouped in a criteria set named Standard for each set of books.

You use AutoPost criteria to automatically post journal batches that have specific combinations of journal source, period, and account type. In Release 10.7 (and earlier) of General Ledger, you could only define one set of criteria for AutoPost. You had to redefine the AutoPost criteria whenever you wanted to change the priorities of the sets of components.

In Release 11 and 11*i*, you can define multiple AutoPost criteria per set of books. You can then schedule AutoPost to run at different times and submission intervals for each criteria set you have defined.

After you review your AutoPost criteria, you can submit and schedule your AutoPost runs using the Submit Request window. You will need to provide the Criteria Set name as a run parameter. This parameter was new in Release 11.

> **Additional Information:** Posting Journal Batches Automatically in *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*

Step 7: Define GIS conversion rates and rate types (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL)**
Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide**, **Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Global Intercompany System (GIS)**

In earlier releases, GIS subsidiaries were able to use period rates or daily rates when transferring foreign currency journals. With Release 11*i* (backported to 11.0), GIS subsidiaries use only daily rates. Therefore, you must specify conversion rate types and daily conversion rates for each of your subsidiaries.

To define conversion rate types:
1. In the Conversion Rate Types window (Setup > Currencies > Rates > Types), enter a Name and Description for the new conversion rate type.

2. Save your work.

To define conversion rates:
1. In the Daily Rates window (Setup > Currencies > Rates > Daily), enter the From Currency — the currency you want to convert from using the rates you enter. General Ledger automatically displays the functional currency for your set of books as the To Currency — the currency you want to convert to.

2. Enter the Conversion Date and Type.

3. Enter the conversion rate to convert your From Currency amounts to your To Currency amounts.

> **Note:** Set the profile option Daily Rates Window: Enforce Inverse Relationship During Entry to Yes to have the rates displayed in both columns to show the inverse relationship.

4. Save your work.

Step 8: Verify program submission parameters for mass funds check/reservation (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL)**
Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Mass Funds Check/Reservation program**

> **Attention:** Perform this step if you previously used the Mass Approvals program in Release 10.7. Note that Mass Approvals has been renamed in Release 11*i* to Mass Funds Check/Reservation.

You use the Mass Funds Check/Reservation program to check or reserve funds for unposted journal batches. In Release 10.7, GL used your Automatic Posting options to prioritize the funds check and reservation. You must now specify the AutoPost criteria set as a parameter when you run Mass Funds Check/Reservation. If you have used Standard Request Submission to set the program to run at specific intervals, cancel your existing Standard Request Submission, and create a new one. Enter new program parameters and specify an appropriate AutoPost criteria set.

> **Additional Information:** Running the Mass Funds Check/Reservation Program, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*

Step 9: Set function security for journal posting and reversing functions (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **System Administrator/Application Specialist (GL)**
Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Enter Journals**

In Release 10.7, function security for journal posting in the Enter Journals and Encumbrances windows was enabled with the profile option Journals: Allow Posting During Journal Entry.

You must now use the Oracle Applications standard Function Security features in System Administration to restrict user access to journal posting and reversing functions. If you do not specifically exclude the functions Enter Journals: Post and

Enter Journals: Reverse from selected responsibilities, all users will have access to these functions.

> **Additional Information:**   Overview of Function Security, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 10: Define Daily Rates profile option (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL) / System Administration**
Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Entering Daily Rates**

The profile option Daily Rates Window:Enforce Inverse Relationship During Entry is used to specify whether to enforce the automatic calculation of inverse exchange rates in the Daily Rates window. When the profile option is set to Yes and a user enters a daily rate to convert currency A to currency B, Oracle General Ledger automatically calculates the inverse rate (currency B to A) and enters it in the adjacent column. If either rate is changed, Oracle General Ledger automatically recalculates the other. When the profile option is set to No, the inverse relationship is not enforced. Users can change either of the rates independently. Prior to Release 11, the inverse relationship was always enforced.

> **Additional Information:**   General Ledger Applications Profile Options, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*

Step 11: Set up intercompany balancing (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 or 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL)**
Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Intercompany Balancing**

To support the enhanced intercompany balancing feature, there are now four types of qualifiers: the Balancing Segment, Natural Account Segment, Cost Center Segment and the Intercompany Segment.

> **Attention:**   If you intend to use the intercompany segment after this upgrade for intercompany balancing, your existing accounting flexfield structure must contain an intercompany segment that uses the Balancing Segment value set.

The Intercompany segment qualifier allows you to track the trading companies involved in an intercompany transaction by populating the intercompany segment with the balancing segment of the trading partner. When users post intercompany journal entries, General Ledger creates balancing journal lines using the appropriate intercompany accounts for the source, category, balancing segment and type, with consideration as well for the intercompany segment and clearing company, if applicable.

If you designed your Release 11.0 and earlier account structure with an additional segment that uses your Balancing Segment value set, you have a one-time opportunity to assign the Intercompany segment qualifier to this segment.

> **Attention:**   You can still take advantage of the enhanced intercompany balancing features available in Release 11*i* without using the intercompany segment.

To define intercompany balancing:

1. Open the Key Flexfield Segments Summary form, and query the chart of accounts used by your set of books.

2. In the Key Flexfields Segment window (Setup > Financials > Flexfields > Key > Segments), unfreeze all account structures that reference your account segment.

3. Locate the additional segment that will be assigned the Intercompany Segment qualifier.

    > **Note:**   This segment must use the Balancing Segment value set.

4. Assign the Intercompany Segment qualifier to this segment by checking the Intercompany Segment check box.

5. Refreeze all account structures that reference your account segment.

6. Save your work.

7. In the Set of Books window (Setup > Financials > Books > Define), enable the option to Balance Intercompany Journals for your set of books.

8. Save your work.

9. In the Intercompany Accounts window (Setup > Accounts > Intercompany), enter the intercompany accounts for the combinations of source, category,

balancing segment value, and type (Due To ∕ Due From). Optionally, define a default clearing company.

10. Save your work.

> **Additional Information:** Defining Your Accounting Flexfield, Designing Your Account Segments, Intercompany Balancing, Defining Intercompany Accounts, Accounting for Multiple Companies Using a Single Set of Books *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*

Step 12: Define new consolidation mapping rules (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL)**
Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Consolidation**

> **Attention:** We recommend that you perform this step if you use the Global Consolidation System (GCS).

You can use new rules for defining consolidation mappings. In particular, there are mapping rules that enable you to consolidate using parent values of your summary accounts. Note that any existing mapping rules you defined in Release 10.7 will be retained in Release 11*i*.

We recommend that you read about the new Global Consolidation System in the *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11i*, then define new rules or modify your consolidation mapping definitions as needed.

> **Additional Information:** Multi-Company Accounting and Consolidation and the Global Consolidation System, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*

Step 13: Review concurrent program controls (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Database Administrator/Application Specialist (GL)**
Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Open Period, Journal Import, MassAllocations, Add/Delete Summary Templates**

Journal Import processes no longer refer to the concurrent program control setting, Number of Accounting Flexfields in Memory. The concurrent program control setting, Number of Accounting Flexfields in Memory only applies to MassAllocations. For performance reasons, you may want to review and adjust the settings in the Concurrent Program Controls window (Setup > System > Control).

Step 14: Define Archive and Purge profile option (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 or 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator /Application Specialist (GL)**
Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Archive and Purge process**

> **Attention:** You do not need to perform this step if you have applied the mini-packs for Release 11.0.2 or 11.0.3.

You can use a profile option (GL: Number of Purge Workers) to specify the number of child processes that you want to launch simultaneously when purging large volumes of journals. General Ledger splits the work load among many subprocesses (child processes), which run simultaneously in parallel to speed up the purge process.

As the System Administrator, set this profile option in the System Profile Values window (Profile > System). Specify how many parallel processes you want to run when purging journals by entering a value from 1 to 30. If the profile option is not set, purging will be done sequentially.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Applications User's Guide*; Appendix B, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*

Step 15: Define GL Summarization profile options (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator/ Application Specialist (GL)**
Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Add/Delete Summary Templates program**

Parallel Summary Template Deletion deletes multiple summary templates more efficiently by splitting the work load among many smaller subprocesses which run simultaneously. You can specify the number of allowed deletion processes to optimize database performance while reducing the amount of time required to

delete summary templates. In the System Profile Values window as System Administrator (Profile > System), set these profile options to perform parallel processing when deleting summary templates:

- GL Summarization: Number of Delete Workers: Specify how many parallel processes you want to run when deleting summary templates by entering a value from 1 to 30.

- GL Summarization: Accounts Processed at a time per Delete Worker: Specify how many accounts you want each worker to process at a time.

- GL Summarization: Rows Deleted per Commit: Specify the number of rows that you want deleted in a balance table per worker when deleting summary templates.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Applications User's Guide*; Appendix B, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*

Oracle Payables Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❑	1.	Set up Offset taxes (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
❑	2.	Set up the future-dated payment account (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
❑	3.	Set up taxes to be partially recoverable (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
❑	4.	Link GL records and AP records (required)	Application Specialist (Payables)

Step 1: Set up Offset taxes (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**
Reference manual: **Tax Codes (Oracle Payables User's Guide)**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Payables Offset Taxes**

Perform this step only if your previous installation had default Offset taxes set at the supplier site. If you currently use Offset taxes and you have assigned an Offset tax to a supplier site, then after the upgrade to Release 11*i*, Offset taxes will no longer default to new distributions unless you perform this step.

In Release 11*i*, the default Offset tax is no longer associated with a supplier site. Instead, it is associated with a Sales or User-defined tax. During the upgrade, if a

supplier site had a default Offset tax assigned to it, then the upgrade will automatically enable the new Use Offset Taxes check box at the supplier site. This check box will enable use of default Offset taxes for the supplier site. If this check box is enabled at the supplier site, then when you enter a tax code with an active associated Offset Tax code, Payables automatically creates an Offset tax distribution.

Run the script to create the Offset Tax Code Upgrade Report. It lists for each organization all combinations of defaults for tax code and Offset tax code that you have set at the supplier site level and each supplier site that uses a combination.

Review the report to determine where to assign active Offset taxes to active Tax Codes. You may need to duplicate and rename a tax code if it is paired with more than one Offset tax. For example, supplier site A has Tax1 and Offset Tax1 set as defaults, and supplier site B has Tax1 and Offset Tax2 set as defaults. You need to duplicate and rename Tax1 so you can assign Offset Tax 2 to it, and then assign the new tax to supplier site B.

1. Run the script to create the Offset Tax Code Upgrade report:

   For UNIX users:

   ```
   $ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apofftax.sql
   ```

   For NT users:

   ```
   C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apofftax.sql
   ```

2. Review the report and identify any tax codes you need to duplicate and rename or identify the Offset taxes you need to associate with tax codes.

3. Navigate to the Tax Codes window (Setup > Taxes > Tax Codes).

4. If you had Sales or User-defined tax codes associated with more than one Offset tax, then duplicate and rename them.

5. Query each Sales or User-defined tax code that you want to associate with an Offset tax code.

6. In the Offset Tax field, enter an active Offset tax code and save your work.

7. Update supplier sites that had tax code defaults associated with more than one Offset tax. Navigate to each supplier site (Suppliers > Entry). Choose the Sites button). Change the default tax code to the duplicated and renamed tax code.

8. Save your work.

Step 2: Set up the future-dated payment account (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**
Reference manual: **Future Dated Payments (Oracle Payables User's Guide***)*	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Payables Future Dated Payments**

Perform this step only if you want to use future-dated payments in Release 11*i*.

In Release 11*i*, Payables added fields for the future dated payment account in four windows and renamed the field in the Payment Documents window. Perform this step to populate the future dated payment account in the four windows: Financials Options, Suppliers (only if you do not use Multi-org), Supplier Sites, and Bank Accounts. Refer to your Oracle Payables user's guide for details on when these accounts are used.

If you used future dated payments in your previous release, then the upgrade does the following for each payment document you used for future dated payments:

- Defaults the account you had defined in the Cash Clearing field of the Payment Documents window to the Future Dated Payment (account) field in the Payment Documents window

- Sets the Future Date Use option to Allowed in the Payment Documents window

In the Payables Options window, specify whether you want to use the supplier site or payment document account when Payables accounts for Future Dated Payments. If no value is set, this parameter is automatically set to Payment Document during the upgrade.

For each organization, specify the future dated payment account in the Financials Options window. Then run the script to populate the Future Dated Payment (account) field for Suppliers, Supplier Sites, and Bank Accounts. Note that if the upgrade populated the future dated payment account value for a payment document then the script will not overwrite it. The script needs to be submitted only once, and will update all organizations.

1. In the Financials Options window (Setup > Options > Financials), for each organization, enter a value for the Future Dated Payment (account).

2. Save your work.

3. Run the following script to populate the Future Dated Payment account field for Suppliers, Supplier Sites, and Bank Accounts. The script prompts for a batch size for the commit cycle. For more information on the batch size parameter, refer to the Overview chapter in this manual.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apxfdp01.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apxfdp01.sql
```

4. Read the documentation on future dated payments in the *Oracle Payables User's Guide*. Review and reset any values for Future Dated Payment account in the Supplies, Supplier Sites, Bank Accounts, and Payment Document windows.

5. Save your work.

Step 3: Set up taxes to be partially recoverable (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**
Reference manual: **Financials Options, Recoverable Tax (Oracle Payables User's Guide)**	Do before anyone uses: **Recoverable Tax (in either Payables or Purchasing)**

This step is necessary *only* for those operating units in which you have set the Enable Recoverable Tax Financials option to Yes (as described in Payables Step 4 in Chapter 3). Refer to *Oracle Payables User's Guide* for details, but at a minimum, do the following.

1. For each operating unit in which the Enable Recoverable Tax Financials option is set to Yes, navigate to the Financials Options window (Setup > Options > Financials). In the Tax tabbed region, enter a value in the Default Recovery Rate field. For example, if you want taxes to be 100% recoverable, enter 100. You can override this value when you set up your tax codes.

2. To set up or review tax code recoverability, navigate to the Tax Codes window (Setup > Tax > Codes). Review the recovery rate of each tax code and ensure that it is set correctly to reflect the recoverability you intend. For example, if you want a tax to be 100% recoverable, the recovery rate should be 100. If you want a tax to be non-recoverable (such as for U.S. state and local taxes), the recovery rate should be 0. If you want to enter any value between 0 and 100 (partially recoverable), you may do so now.

3. Save your work.

Step 4: Link GL records and AP records (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**
Reference manual: **Accounting (Oracle Payables User's Guide)**	Do before anyone uses: **Drill down functionality from GL to Payables**

The apallink.sql script creates links between records in Oracle General Ledger and records in Oracle Payables, which allow you to drill down from GL journals to the applicable invoice or payment document through the corresponding sub-ledger accounting entries in Payables.

The script takes two parameters: Start Date and End Date. It updates all accounting entry lines for invoices and checks in that date range. You can run it multiple times, for example, in small date ranges to manage your system resources. We recommend you begin with the most recent data and work backwards until the entire pre-Release 11*i* date range has been updated. Although you cannot drill down between records that have been updated and those that have not, having non-updated records does not affect other functions, such as data entry.

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $AP_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apallink.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apallink.sql
```

At the SQL prompt, when it asks for date parameter values, remember to give the dates in DD/MM/YYYY format.

Oracle Projects Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❑	**1.**	Implement Self-Service Time (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
❑	**2.**	Implement cross charge (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)

Step 1: Implement Self-Service Time (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Self-Service Time Implementation/Migration Guide, Release 11*i***	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Self-Service Time**

Perform this step if you used Personal Time and Expense (PTE) or Project Time and Expense to enter timecard information in Release 10.7 or 11.0.

To enter timecard information, you must implement Self-Service Time and roll it out to your users. Contact Oracle Support Services for the availability date, and to obtain the Self-Service Time product update. Refer to *Oracle Self-Service Time Implementation/Migration Guide Release 11i* on Oracle*MetaLink* for data migration details.

Step 2: Implement cross charge (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Cross Charge**

As of this release, cross charging and Borrowed and Lent Accounting are no longer enabled by way of profile options. You must perform this step if you cross-charged transactions across Operating Units or used the Borrowed and Lent Revenue function before the upgrade, and you want to continue using this functionality in this release.

To perform this step, follow the Cross Charge and Inter-Project Billing implementation instructions in the *Oracle Projects User's Guide.*

Oracle Receivables Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	**1.** Define Application Rule Set (recommended)	Application Specialist (Receivables)
❏	**2.** Define GL tax assignments for Natural Account tax codes (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Receivables)
❏	**3.** Set up Internet Receivables (recommended)	System Administrator
❏	**4.** Enable Header Level Rounding (recommended)	Application Specialist (Receivables)
❏	**5.** Enable credit card processing (recommended)	Application Specialist (Receivables)
❏	**6.** Enable cross-currency lockbox (recommended)	Application Specialist (Receivables)
❏	**7.** Set Up Bills of Exchange (recommended)	Application Specialist (Receivables)

Step 1: Define Application Rule Set (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Receivables or Public Sector Receivables User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Post Quick Cash or the Applications window**

An Application Rule Set is a user-definable hierarchy that manages the application of payments when you manually apply receipts or when you run Post Quick Cash. You can choose one of the Application Rule Sets that Oracle Receivables provides or define your own. You can assign an Application Rule Set to your Transaction Types and at the System Options level.

Oracle Receivables provides the following Application Rule Sets:

Line First - Tax After	Applies payments to the open Line amounts first followed by the Tax, Freight, and Finance Charges. This is the default.
Line First - Tax Prorate	Applies payments proportionately to the open Line and Tax amount for each line. This rule set then applies the remaining amount to any Freight and Finance Charges.
Prorate All	Applies payments proportionately to the open Line, Tax, Freight, and Finance Charges.

You can define additional Application Rule Sets in the Application Rule Sets window.

> **Additional Information:** Application Rule Sets, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Receivables User's Guide*

> **Note:** If you use the Oracle Applications Multiple Organization Support feature to use multiple sets of books for one Receivables installation, you need to assign an Application Rule Set to your Transaction Types and/or at the System Options level for *each* of your organizations.

Step 2: Define GL tax assignments for Natural Account tax codes (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Receivables Tax Manual**	Do before anyone uses: **AutoInvoice or Transactions window**

If you want to use the Account Method for Value Added Tax (VAT) compliance, you can set up Receivables to use the tax code assigned to the Natural Account segment of your Revenue account when you manually enter transactions or import them using AutoInvoice.

> **Additional Information:**   Controlling Tax from your Revenue Account and Implementing Value Added Tax, *Oracle Receivables Tax Manual.*

> **Note:**   You do not need to perform this step if you have already completed it as part of your Oracle Payables or Oracle General Ledger upgrade. If you use multiple sets of books architecture, you need to perform this step for *each* product installation.

Step 3: Set up Internet Receivables (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Internet Receivables**

Set up Internet Receivables (iReceivables) if you want your employees and customers to be able to view their account balances, print invoices, and dispute bills using a standard web browser. Setup steps include defining iReceivables users, setting up function security and Receivables profile options, and setting up the Credit Memo Request Workflow.

> **Additional Information:**   Setting Up iReceivables in the *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*

Step 4: Enable Header Level Rounding (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Transactions window**

Header Level Rounding enables you to record and post rounding amounts in a separate account that you define. Enable this feature if you want Oracle Receivables to round amounts at the transaction header level when you create transactions in foreign currencies. Navigate to Setup > System > System Option, and select the Header Level Rounding check box.

> **Additional Information:** Header Level Rounding, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*

Step 5: Enable credit card processing (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Credit Card Processing**

If you want to accept credit cards as payment for open debit items, you must set up profile options, create bank accounts, and define a new receipt class in Oracle Receivables.

> **Additional Information:** Setting Up Receivables for Credit Card Transactions and Payments, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*

Step 6: Enable cross-currency lockbox (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **AutoLockbox**

If you want to use AutoLockbox to apply receipts to transactions in different currencies, you must define profile options in Oracle Receivables and set up exchange rates in Oracle General Ledger.

> **Additional Information:** Importing and Applying Cross Currency Receipts in the *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*

Step 7: Set Up Bills of Exchange (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Bills of Exchange**

If you want to create Bills of Exchange in Oracle Receivables, define a new receipt class and payment method to use with these transactions. You can also set up a new

profile option to indicate whether Bills of Exchange are included when calculating a customer's open balance.

> **Additional Information:** Bills of Exchange, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*

Country-specific Financials Product Family

The following Category 6 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Country-specific Financials product family.

Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks

Checklist		Perform for this country...
❏	**1.** Define additional company information – Taiwan (required)	Taiwan
❏	**2.** Define additional company information – Singapore (conditionally required)	Singapore
❏	**3.** Update tax types (conditionally required)	Singapore

Step 1: Define additional company information – Taiwan (required)

Perform for this country: **Taiwan**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **Product Manager**	Do before anyone uses: **Government uniform invoice**
Reference manual: **Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**

In Release 11*i*, your company's uniform number (taxpayer ID) is defined in the Human Resources Location window instead of the globalization flexfield in the System Options window. After the upgrade, define your company's taxpayer ID as part of defining additional company information.

In the Taxpayer ID field, enter the uniform numbers that you recorded in Category 2, Step 5 (Record uniform numbers for your company).

> **Additional Information:** Additional Company Information, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

Step 2: Define additional company information – Singapore (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Singapore**	Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**
Performed by: **Product Manager**	Do before anyone uses: **GST Reporting**
Reference manual: **Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**

The Singapore GST Registrations window is obsolete in this release. To enter GST registration information, you must first use the Location window to enter additional information for a location, and then define the location as a legal entity and enter the GST registration number in the Organization window. To complete this step, from the Singaporean AR responsibility, navigate to Setup > System > Organizations/Locations.

> **Additional Information:**   Additional Company Information, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

Step 3: Update tax types (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Singapore**	Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**
Performed by: **System Administrator/Manager (Payables and Receivables)**	Do before anyone uses: **GST reporting**
Reference manual: **Oracle Payables User's Guide and Oracle Receivables User's Guide**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**

To see historic transactions in the Singaporean GST F5 report, update the tax types for the historical transactions that you entered in Release 11. Then, set up new tax types that correspond to the Release 11 tax categories in the Payables and Receivables Lookups window and update the tax types associated with these transactions with the new tax type defined.

1. Your system administrator runs jasgupg1.sql to check the tax categories/tax types used in Singapore Payables and Receivables for all organizations.

   For UNIX users:

   ```
   $ cd $JA_TOP/admin/sql
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg1.sql
   ```

   For NT users:

   ```
   C:\> cd %JA_TOP%\admin\sql
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg1.sql
   ```

Review the jasgupg1.lst output file generated in the current working directory that you ran the script from. You may not need to update tax types if the output file does not list any rows.

2. In the Payables Lookups (Singaporean Payables > Oracle Payables > Setup > Lookups > Payables) and Receivables Lookups (Singaporean AR > Setup > System > QuickCodes > Receivables) windows, the product managers define new tax types that correspond to the tax categories that you associated with your tax codes in Release 11.

> **Additional Information:**   Lookups, *Oracle Payables User's Guide;* Defining Receivables Lookups, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide.*

> **Note:**   In Release 11*i,* the Singaporean GST F5 report prefixes Payables tax types with the tax class associated with the tax code. Tax classes are new in Release 11*i,* and can be either input or output. The report lists transactions grouped by tax class and tax type. You do not need to include INPUT or OUTPUT in the lookup codes that you define for your new tax types. For example, if you had the tax category INPUT-STANDARD in Release 11, define the corresponding Payables tax type in Release 11*i* with the lookup code STANDARD.

3. Your system administrator runs jasgupg2.sql, which updates tax type fields in both Payables and Receivables Tax Codes windows for the tax codes that were associated with the tax category value in the globalization flexfield. Release 11 provides five tax categories for Payables and four for Receivables. This script updates all nine categories.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg2.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg2.sql
```

Specify the new tax type for each tax category. If you are not using any of these tax categories, you do not need to provide a value for the tax type parameter.

Press Return and continue with the next tax category. The script does not update the tax type if you do not specify a value for the tax type parameter.

For example:

```
Updating Tax Category INPUT-STANDARD
Tax Type:
```

If you enter STANDARD for the Tax Type, the script checks if the tax type STANDARD is defined as a lookup code for the lookup type Tax Type in the Payables Lookups window. It updates the tax type field with the new STANDARD tax type in the Payables Tax Codes window for all records that were saved with tax category INPUT-STANDARD.

4. Run jasgupg1.sql to list the tax categories/tax types after the update:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg1.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg1.sql
```

Oracle Financials Common Countries Features Tasks

Checklist			Perform for this country...
❑	1.	Set up Appreciation QuickCode (recommended)	Austria, Germany, Switzerland
❑	2.	Upgrade Appreciation (recommended)	Austria, Germany, Switzerland
❑	3.	Assign request groups to your responsibilities (recommended)	Oracle Financials Users in Japan

Step 1: Set up Appreciation QuickCode (recommended)

Perform for this country: **Austria, Germany, and Switzerland**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **Database Administrator and Application Specialist**	Do before anyone uses: **DACH Asset Summary report or DACH Depreciation Analysis report**
Reference manual: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**	

The DACH Asset Summary report and DACH Depreciation Analysis report display appreciation separately from other types of unplanned depreciation. To distinguish

between appreciation amounts when you run these reports, you must use the APPREC QuickCode for the unplanned depreciation type.

From the Oracle Assets responsibility use the QuickCodes window (Setup > Asset System > QuickCodes) to maintain unplanned depreciation types. Query the TYPE FOR UNPLANNED DEPRECIATION QuickCode type and specify APPREC in the Value field to set up a new unplanned depreciation type for appreciation transactions. In addition, you should disable any other unplanned depreciation types that were previously used to record appreciation.

Step 2: Upgrade Appreciation (recommended)

Perform for this country: **Austria, Germany, and Switzerland**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **Database Administrator / Application Specialist**	Do before anyone uses: **DACH Asset Summary report or DACH Depreciation Analysis report**
Reference manual: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**	

Appreciation transactions that were previously entered using a different unplanned depreciation type are not shown as appreciation amounts in the correct columns of the DACH Asset Summary report or the DACH Depreciation Analysis report. Run the jgzzfaap.sql script to correct this situation. This script lets you specify the unplanned depreciation type that was previously used.

After you run the script, you should only use the APPREC QuickCode as the unplanned depreciation type for appreciation transactions. You should manually disable the unplanned depreciation type that was previously used for appreciations.

To run jgzzfaap.sql, type:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $JG_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzfaap.sql <type>
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %JG_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzfaap.sql <type>
```

where <type> is the unplanned depreciation type that was previously used. You should consult an Oracle Assets user to see which unplanned depreciation type, if any, was previously used to record appreciation transactions.

From the Oracle Assets responsibility, maintain unplanned depreciation types in the QuickCodes window (Setup > Asset System > QuickCodes). You can see different

possible values for unplanned depreciation types by querying the TYPE FOR UNPLANNED DEPRECIATION QuickCode type. For example, run this script:

For UNIX users:
```
$ sqlplus scott/tiger @jgzzfaap.sql OLDTYPE
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> sqlplus scott/tiger @jgzzfaap.sql OLDTYPE
```

to convert transactions with the OLDTYPE unplanned depreciation type to the APPREC QuickCode. The script updates the TRANSACTION_SUBTYPE column in FA_TRANSACTION_HEADERS.

> **Additional Information:** Unplanned Depreciation, *Oracle Assets User's Guide*

Step 3: Assign request groups to your responsibilities (recommended)

Perform for this country: **Oracle Financials users in Japan**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **System Administrator**	Do before anyone uses: **Reports**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**	

Oracle Financials customers in Japan should assign the request groups listed in the following table to their responsibilities to access these reports. Perform this step in the Standard Request Submission window from the System Administrator responsibility (Security > Responsibility > Define).

Customer Balances Detail	Customer Balances Detail (180)
Customer Balances Summary	Publish Tax Reconciliation by Taxable Account
Supplier Balances Detail	Supplier Balances Detail (180)
Supplier Balances Summary	Subledger Balance Maintenance for Payables Accounting Periods
Subledger Balance Maintenance for Receivables Accounting Periods	

New Japan request groups are as follows:

Assign this request group...	To your...
JGJP + AP Reports	Payables responsibilities
JGJP + AR Reports	Receivables responsibilities

Assign this request group...	To your...
JGJP + GL Reports	General Ledger responsibilities

In the Responsibilities window, navigate to the Request Group region and use the list of values in the Name field to assign request groups to your responsibilities.

Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks

Checklist			Perform for this country...
❏	1.	Update Polish and Turkish journal line sequence numbers (conditionally required)	Poland, Turkey
❏	2.	Update Spanish globalization flexfield contexts (conditionally required)	Spain
❏	3.	Update Danish EFT invoices to use EDI flexfield (required)	Denmark
❏	4.	Recreate French income tax types (conditionally required)	France
❏	5.	Update French deductible VAT invoices (conditionally required)	France
❏	6.	Update Italian VAT transactions (conditionally required)	Italy
❏	7.	Create Italian inventory tax types (conditionally required)	Italy
❏	8.	Update taxable amounts for custom bills and self invoices (required)	Italy
❏	9.	Update Hungarian VAT transactions (conditionally required)	Hungary
❏	10.	Enable the Additional Information for Hungary globalization flexfield on the Transaction Types window (conditionally required)	Hungary
❏	11.	Enable the Tax Code field in the Receipts window (conditionally required)	Germany

Step 1: Update Polish and Turkish journal line sequence numbers (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Poland, Turkey**	Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**
Performed by: **Database Administrator**	Do before anyone uses: **General Ledger for Poland or Turkey**

In Release 11, Oracle Financials for Poland and Oracle Financials for Turkey stored journal line sequence numbers in a descriptive flexfield (JG_ZZ_RECON_LINES) in the Journals window. In Release 11*i*, the journal line sequence numbers for these countries are stored in a globalization flexfield (JG_GL_JE_LINES_INFO) in the

same window. After the upgrade, you must update your journal line sequence numbers to use the new flexfield.

1. As System Administrator, navigate to the System Profile Values window (Profile > System) and set the JG: Territory and GL Set of Books ID profile options at responsibility level for your GL Localizations responsibility (Polish GL Localizations or Turkish GL Localizations). Set the JG: Territory profile option to *Poland* for Polish GL Localizations or to *Turkey* for Turkish GL Localizations. Set the GL Set of Books profile option to the appropriate set of books for your responsibility.

2. From the GL Localizations responsibility (Polish GL Localizations or Turkish GL Localizations), run the Journal Lines Global Descriptive Flexfield Synchronization program using the Standard Request Submission windows.

> **Note:**   If you use multiple sets of books architecture (MSOBA) for your territory, you must run the Journal Lines Global Descriptive Flexfield Synchronization program once for each set of books.

> **Additional Information:**   *Oracle Financials for Poland User's Guide; Oracle Financials for Turkey User's Guide*

Step 2: Update Spanish globalization flexfield contexts (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Spain**	Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**
Performed by: **Database Administrator**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Financials for Spain**

Oracle Financials for Spain uses new contexts for these globalization flexfields:

Globalization Flexfield	Table	Window
JG_AP_INVOICES	AP_INVOICES_ALL	Invoices
JG_RA_CUSTOMER_TRX	RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_ALL	Transactions
JG_HR_LOCATIONS	HR_LOCATIONS_ALL	Location

To properly access your existing country-specific data after the upgrade, you must update the globalization flexfield contexts by running this script:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
```

Category 6 — Before Using Product Features   **7-41**

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeesgdfm.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeesgdfm.sql
```

Step 3: Update Danish EFT invoices to use EDI flexfield (required)

Perform for this country: **Denmark**	Perform if upgrading from:**10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **Product Manager (Financials for Denmark)**	Do before anyone uses: **Danish EDI**
Reference manual: **Oracle Payables User's Guide**, **Oracle Financials for Denmark User's Guide**	

In Release 11*i*, Oracle Financials for Denmark replaces the Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) payment process (from Release 10.7 and 11) with Electronic Data Interchange (EDI). You must run jedkediu.sql to migrate the additional country-specific invoice information for your outstanding invoices from the Release 10.7 or 11 EFT flexfield to the Release 11*i* globalization flexfield for EDI.

Before you run jedkediu.sql:

1. Update additional invoice information for all open invoices with a payment method of Electronic.

   When you run jedkediu.sql, the additional country-specific invoice information for your outstanding invoices is migrated from the Release 10.7 or 11 EFT flexfield to the Release 11*i* globalization flexfield for EDI. Oracle Payables for Denmark places a hold on any invoice with incomplete information. You must update the additional invoice information in Release 10.7 or 11 EFT flexfields for all open invoices that you want to upgrade with a payment method of Electronic.

   > **Additional Information:** Invoice EFT Information, *Oracle Financials for Denmark User's Guide*

2. Create a new hold code for the data migration script.

   You must also create a new hold code for the data migration script to use when placing the holds. From the Invoice Approvals window (Danish AP > Setup > Invoice > Approvals), enter EFT_TO_EDI_DATA_MIGRATE in the Name field

for the new hold code. In the Type field, select Invoice Hold Reason. You should also check the Postable and Releaseable check for this hold code.

> **Additional Information:** Invoice Approvals, *Oracle Payables User's Guide*

To run jedkediu.sql:

3. Move additional country-specific invoice information.

    To move the additional invoice information for your outstanding invoices from the Release 10.7 or 11 EFT flexfield to the Release 11i flexfield, run this script:

    For UNIX users:

    ```
    $ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
    $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jedkediu.sql
    ```

    For NT users:

    ```
    C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
    C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jedkediu.sql
    ```

    Oracle Payables for Denmark places a hold on any invoice with incomplete information using the hold code you previously defined.

After you run jedkediu.sql:

4. Enter missing information for invoices placed on hold.

    After you run jedkediu.sql, you must enter any missing information for invoices that were placed on hold with the Danish data migration hold code. For instructions on entering additional country-specific invoice information for EDI, refer to Entering Invoices, *Oracle Financials for Denmark User's Guide*. When the information is complete, you can manually release the holds and approve the invoices for payment.

Step 4: Recreate French income tax types (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **France**	Perform if upgrading from:**10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **Database Administrator**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Financials for France**

If you used Oracle Financials for France before the upgrade, you must recreate the French income tax types that were removed as a part of the upgrade process. Run this script to recreate the income tax types:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jefrtxtp.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jefrtxtp.sql
```

Step 5: Update French deductible VAT invoices (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **France**	Perform if upgrading from:**10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **Database Administrator**	Do before anyone uses: **French Deductible VAT Declaration Report**

In Release 11*i*, the French Deductible VAT Declaration report uses deduction tax rules, rather than tax types, to select invoices for inclusion. When you enter new invoices, you associate a deduction tax rule with an invoice using the Deduction Tax Rule field in the globalization flexfield at invoice header level in the Invoices window.

To include invoices that you entered before the upgrade in the French Deductible VAT Declaration report after the upgrade, you must associate a deduction tax rule with those invoices by running a script. The script updates the Deduction Tax Rule field for invoices with these tax types: CRE/M, CRE/M-1, DEB/M, and DEB/M-1.

Run this script to update your deductible VAT invoices:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jefrapdv.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jefrapdv.sql
```

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Financials for France User's Guide*

Step 6: Update Italian VAT transactions (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Italy**	Perform if upgrading from:**10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **Database Administrator**	Do before anyone uses: **Italian Purchase VAT Register, Italian Payables Sales VAT Register, Italian Payables Summary VAT Report, Italian Receivables Sales VAT Register, Italian Receivables Deferred VAT Register**

In Release 11*i*, Oracle Financials for Italy uses a new method to mark VAT transactions that were already reported on a final version of these VAT reports:

Italian Purchase VAT Register	Italian Payables Sales VAT Register
Italian Payables Summary VAT Report	Italian Receivables Sales VAT Register
Italian Receivables Deferred VAT Register	

You must update the VAT transactions that were included on final VAT reports before the upgrade, to prevent these transactions from being included the next time you print these reports after the upgrade.

Run this script to update your VAT transactions:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeitrvat.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeitrvat.sql
```

The script marks the transactions as reported by inserting a record for every transaction against each register into the new table JE_IT_VAT_REPORT_INV.

> **Additional Information:**   *Oracle Financials for Italy User's Guide*

Step 7: Create Italian inventory tax types (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Italy**	Perform if upgrading from:**10.7 character mode**
Performed by: **Database Administrator**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Financials for Italy**

If you used Oracle Financials for Italy before the upgrade, you must create additional tax types. Run this script to create the inventory tax types:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeitmtlt.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeitmtlt.sql
```

Step 8: Update taxable amounts for custom bills and self invoices (required)

Perform for this country: **Italy**	Perform if upgrading from:**10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **Database Administrator/Application Specialist**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Payables Summary VAT Report, Italian Purchase VAT Report, Italian Payables Sales VAT Register (Self Invoice, EU VAT)**

In Release 11*i*, you use the globalization flexfield in the Distributions window to record the taxable amounts for self invoices and custom bills. Self invoices and custom bills entered before the upgrade are not displayed on the Italian Payables Summary VAT Report, the Italian Purchase VAT Register, and the Italian Sales VAT Register (Self Invoice, EU VAT).

To ensure that the VAT reports correctly display these amounts, run jeitapid.sql. It updates invoice distributions that have a tax type of Custom Bill or Self Invoice by updating the GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE_CATEGORY and GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE1 at the invoice distribution level (on the ap_invoice_distributions table).

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $JE_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeitapid.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\patch\ll5\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeitapid.sql
```

Enter the Set of Books ID for your Italian organization at the prompt. If you have multiple Italian organizations, run the script once for each organization.

> **Additional Information:**   *Oracle Financials for Italy User's Guide*

Step 9: Update Hungarian VAT transactions (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Hungary**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **Database Administrator**	Do before anyone uses: **Hungarian Purchases VAT Register or Hungarian Sales VAT Register**

In Release 11*i*, Oracle Financials for Hungary uses a new method to mark VAT transactions that were already reported on a final version of these VAT reports:

- Hungarian Purchases VAT Register
- Hungarian Sales VAT Register

You must update the VAT transactions that were included on final VAT reports before the upgrade, so that the transactions are included on reprints of those final VAT reports after the upgrade. Run this script to update your VAT transactions:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jehurvat.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jehurvat.sql
```

The script updates the transactions by inserting additional information into the global attribute columns on the AP_INVOICE_DISTRIBUTIONS table for Payables transactions or the RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES table for Receivables transactions.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Financials for Hungary User's Guide*

Step 10: Enable the Additional Information for Hungary globalization flexfield on the Transaction Types window (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Hungary**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**
Performed by: **System Administrator**	Do before anyone uses: **Hungarian Receivables Open Items Revaluation report**
Reference manual: **Oracle Financials for Hungary User's Guide**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**

In Release 11*i*, Oracle Financials for Hungary provides the Hungarian Receivables Open Items Revaluation report, which revalues all outstanding receivables accounts at a particular date, with regard to a stated reporting period, to reflect foreign exchange rate fluctuations since the original transaction date.

In Hungary, not all transaction types of open items are revalued. You designate whether specific transaction types should be revalued in the Additional Information for Hungary globalization flexfield on the Transaction Types window (Hungarian AR: Setup > Transactions > Transaction Types).

Enable the Additional Information for Hungary globalization flexfield by setting these profile options in the System Profile Values window (System Administrator: Profile > System):

Set this profile option...	To this value...
JG: Application	Oracle Receivables

Set this profile option...	To this value...
JG: Product	European Localizations
JG: Territory	Hungary

Now, use the Revaluate Transaction Type field in this flexfield to manually designate which transaction types should be revalued.

Step 11: Enable the Tax Code field in the Receipts window (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Germany**	Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 character mode**
Performed by: **Database Administrator**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Financials for Germany**

If you used Oracle Financials for Germany before the upgrade, you must enable the Tax Code field in the Receipts window. Run this script to enable the Tax Code field:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jedetcfe.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jedetcfe.sql
```

Oracle Financials for the Americas Tasks

Checklist		Perform for this country...
❏	1. Update Colombian journal line third-party information (conditionally required)	Colombia

Step 1: Update Colombian journal line third-party information (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Colombia**	Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**
Performed by: **Database Administrator/ Application Specialist (General Ledger)**	Users must log off: **No**
Reference manual: **Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide**	Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

In Release 11, Oracle Financials for Colombia stores journal line third-party information in a descriptive flexfield (JG_ZZ_RECON_LINES) in the Journals window. In Release 11*i*, this information is stored in a globalization flexfield (JG_GL_JE_LINES_INFO) in the same window. After the upgrade, update your journal line third-party information to use the new flexfield:

1. As the System Administrator, navigate to the System Profile Values window (Profile > System).

2. Set the JG: Territory and GL Set of Books ID profile options at responsibility level for your Colombian GL Localizations responsibility. Set the JG: Territory profile option to *Colombia.* Set the GL Set of Books profile option to the appropriate set of books for your responsibility.

3. From the Colombian GL responsibility, run the journal lines global descriptive flexfield synchronization program using the Standard Request Submission window (Colombian Localization > Other > Requests > Run).

> **Note:** If you use the multiple sets of books architecture (MSOBA) for your territory, you must run the journal lines global descriptive flexfield synchronization program once for each set of books using a different responsibility.

Additional Information: Entering Journal Line Third Party Information*, Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*

HRMS Product Family

The following Category 6 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the HRMS product family.

Oracle Human Resources Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**1.**	Reapply customization to script for Salary Proposal view (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	**2.**	Drop obsolete Oracle users (recommended)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Reapply customization to script for Salary Proposal view (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Salary Administration**

The Salary proposals view (PER_SALARY_PROPOSALS_HRV) has been renamed HRU_SALARY_PROPOSALS to make it consistent with other views that can be customized. If you customized the script that creates this view (peup101v.sql) in Release 10.7 or 11.0, you must reapply your changes for Release 11*i*.

Your custom location was identified during the upgrade preparation. After your custom changes have been applied, rerun the script to recreate the customized view:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $PER_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @peupl01v.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %PER_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @peupl01v.sql
```

Step 2: Drop obsolete Oracle users (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Restricted Security Profiles**

If you used restricted security profiles in Release 10.7, these profiles might now be obsolete. In Release 11*i*, responsibilities that use restricted security profiles connect to the APPS Oracle user. You no longer have to maintain separate Oracle users for every restricted security profile. Your Release 10.7 reporting Oracle users are unaffected by this change.

To list Oracle users that were associated with restricted security profiles in Release 10.7, use the following script:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PER_TOP/admin/sql/peoldsec.sql
```

where <dbname> is the value of your $ORACLE_SID or $TWO_TASK.

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%PER_TOP%\admin\sql\peoldsec.sql
```

where <dbname> is the value of your ORACLE_SID or LOCAL.

This script also indicates which of these Oracle users have been dropped from the database. The output is spooled to a file called peoldsec.lst in your current working directory. If the Oracle users listed in peoldsec.lst do not contain the custom tables or views that you want to preserve, you should drop them — they are no longer used by Oracle HRMS.

 Before dropping a user whose schema contains objects, thoroughly investigate these objects and the implications of dropping them. Pay attention to any cascading effects. For example, if the user owns a table, check whether any views or procedures depend on that table. For example:

For UNIX users:
```
$ sqlplus SYSTEM/<SYSTEM password>
SQL> DROP USER jones;
SQL> exit
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> sqlplus SYSTEM/<SYSTEM password>
SQL> DROP USER jones;
SQL> exit
```

To drop a user and all its schema objects (if any), you must have the DROP USER system privilege. Because this privilege is so powerful, a security administrator is typically the only type of user to have it. You can drop a user from a database using either the Drop menu item of Enterprise Manager/GUI, or the SQL command DROP USER.

If the user's schema contains any schema objects, use the CASCADE option to drop the user and all associated objects and foreign keys that depend on the tables of the user. If you do not specify CASCADE and the user's schema contains objects, an error message is returned and the user is not dropped.

To verify that your obsolete Oracle users have been successfully dropped, rerun peoldsec.sql at any time prior to dropping PER_SECURITY_PROFILES_OLD.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle8 Server Administrator's Guide*

Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**1.**	Check for invalid U.S. address information (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
❏	**2.**	Check for invalid tax balances for limit categories (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist (Payroll)

Step 1: Check for invalid U.S. address information (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone: **Runs a payroll or modifies existing employee tax information**

The Global Legislation Driver (hrglobal.drv) creates a file that lists any existing U.S. addresses (locations or personal addresses) that are invalid. The file pyvaladr.lst can be found in $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out. NT users will find it in %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out. You must check this file and correct any address data that is invalid.

To correct location addresses you must:
1. In the Location window (Work Structures > Location), query the required location and amend the address as required.

2. Save your work.

To correct personal addresses you must:
1. In the People window (People > Enter and Maintain), query the required person and choose the Address button and amend the address as required.

2. Save your work.

After correcting the data, regenerate the .lst file to check that all addresses are now valid. To regenerate the file:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PAY_TOP/admin/sql/pyvaladr.sql
```

where <dbname> is the value of your $ORACLE_SID or $TWO_TASK.

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%PAY_TOP%\admin\sql\pyvaladr.sql
```

where <dbname> is the value of your ORACLE_SID or LOCAL.

Step 2: Check for invalid tax balances for limit categories (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Technical Specialist (Payroll)**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone: **Runs a payroll or any reports showing employee balances**

As of Release 11*i*, all employees who are exempt from SS, FUTA, SDI, SUI or Medicare taxes will have their taxable balances for these taxes set to zero on all payroll runs. You must set to zero any taxable balances previously calculated for employees who fall under these exempt categories. Use the Adjust Tax Balances window to perform this task. Refer to the Adjustments to Employee Tax Balances in *Running Your Payroll Using Oracle HRMS (US)* for further information.

> **Warning:** Wages will be tracked in gross, subject, reduced subject withholdable, and excess. For 940 and SUI reports, the amounts will be included in gross wages and reported as excess; taxable will be correct but excess will not be. The amounts cannot currently be entered as exempt. For 941, the amounts will be stated correctly since they will not be included in taxable. States ask for total wages and excess wages (generally) and derive taxable from those totals.

Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family

The following Category 6 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Manufacturing and Distribution product family. Because Oracle Inventory, Oracle Cost Management, and Oracle Work in Process are closely related, the steps for these products are included under one heading.

Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks

Checklist			Menu Responsibility>function
❑	**1.**	Create indexes on flexfield segment columns - INV (recommended)	N/A
❑	**2.**	Summarize demand history - INV (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory

Checklist			Menu Responsibility>function
❏	**3.**	Define Item Catalog Description profile option - INV (required)	System Administrator
❏	**4.**	Update item descriptions - INV (conditionally required)	N/A

Step 1: Create indexes on flexfield segment columns - INV (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Indicated key flexfields**

To improve performance of your key flexfields, create indexes on the segment columns. We recommend creating these indexes for the following key flexfields:

Flexfield	Base Table
System Items	MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B
Account Aliases	MTL_GENERIC_DISPOSITIONS
Stock Locators	MTL_ITEM_LOCATIONS

1. Determine whether a concatenated index exists for the flexfield segments by running the following SQL*Plus statement and substituting MTL_SYSTEM_ ITEMS_B for <Base Tablename>:

   For UNIX users:

   ```
   $ cd $INV_TOP/admin/sql
   $ sqlplus <INV username>/<INV password> @invflseg.sql <Base Tablename>
   ```

   For NT users:

   ```
   C:\> cd %INV_TOP%\admin\sql
   C:\> sqlplus <INV username>/<INV password> @invflseg.sql <Base Tablename>
   ```

   This statement prints the index name, the name of the indexed column, and the position of the column in the index. If a single index includes all of your segment columns that are enabled for the System Items flexfield, then you already have a concatenated index for the System Items flexfield.

2. If you have segment3, segment4, segment6 (in this order) enabled for your flexfield, and you determine that a concatenated index does not already exist

for these columns, create an index for each one on the MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B table, using the following SQL*Plus statement:

For UNIX users:

```
$ sqlplus <INV username>/<INV password>
SQL> create index MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B_N3
 2 on MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B
 3 (segment3,
 4  segment4,
 5  segment6);
SQL> exit
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> sqlplus <INV username>/<INV password>
SQL> create index MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B_N3
 2 on MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B
 3 (segment3,
 4  segment4,
 5  segment6);
SQL> exit
```

Name your index using the format MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B_NX, where X is the first active segment column. Choose a different X if this index name already exists. In the example, your index name is MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B_N3.

3. Repeat the previous steps to create indexes for MTL_GENERIC_DISPOSITIONS and MTL_ITEM_LOCATIONS.

Step 2: Summarize demand history - INV (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Forecasting**

When MTL_DEMAND_INTERFACE rows are processed, the results are written to MTL_DEMAND. This data needs to be summarized before you can use the Forecasting feature.

To summarize demand history:

1. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Inventory function. Navigate to the Summarize Demand Histories window (Planning > Compile Demand History).

2. Enter *Summarize demand histories* in the Name field.

3. Choose a period type option: Days, Weeks, or Periods.

4. Select the scope of the summarization: All inventory items, Specific inventory item, or Specific category.

5. If you choose Specific inventory item, enter an item.

6. If you choose Specific category, enter a category set and category.

7. Choose Submit to launch the process.

> **Additional Information:** Summarizing Demand History, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*

Step 3: Define Item Catalog Description profile option - INV (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory) / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Items**

You can build an item catalog description by either concatenating the item catalog group *name* with the enabled descriptive element values or by concatenating the item catalog group *description* with the enabled descriptive element values

The profile option INV:Use catalog name item description determines the method used. *Yes* uses the catalog group name. *No* uses the catalog group description.

To provide a value for the profile option:

1. As the System Administrator, navigate to the System Profile Values window.

2. Query for INV:Use catalog name item description and set the value.

3. Save your work.

> **Additional Information:** Profile Options in Oracle Inventory, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*

This profile option can be set at the site, application, responsibility, or user level.

Step 4: Update item descriptions - INV (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory)**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Items**

If you choose to build item descriptions from catalog group descriptions and enabled descriptive element values, you can use the following script to update all existing descriptions for items that have an assigned catalog group:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $INV_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invicgds.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %INV_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invicgds.sql
```

> **Additional Information:**   Overview of Item Cataloging, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*

Oracle Quality Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	**1.** Configure new profile options (1) (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Quality) / System Administrator
❏	**2.** Configure new profile options (2) (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Quality) / System Administrator

Step 1: Configure new profile options (1) (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Quality) / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Quality User's Guide, Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **PO inspections** or **Statware's statistics engine.**

QA:PO Inspection

Determines whether accepted or rejected inspection results and quantities are entered in Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Quality (the default value is PO Inspection). You can update this profile at all levels (User, Responsibility, Application, Site).

QA:Statistics Engine

Determines which statistics engine, Oracle Quality or Statit, will be used to create charts, view descriptive statistics, and export data used to create these charts and views (the default value is Quality). You can update this profile at all levels (User, Responsibility, Application, Site).

To provide a value for the profile option:

1. As the System Administrator, navigate to the System Profile Values window and query for QA:PO Inspection.

2. Set the value and save your work.

3. Query for QA:Statistics Engine and set the value.

4. Save your work.

Step 2: Configure new profile options (2) (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 or 11.0**	Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Quality) / System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Quality User's Guide, Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Oracle Supply Management Portal Implementation Manual**	Do before anyone uses: **Self-Service Quality for Outside Processing** or **Self-Service Quality for PO Shipments (Oracle Supply Management Portal)**

QA:Receive Web Supplier Notification

Choose Yes to display the Send Notification button on the Self-Service Outside Processing window in Oracle Supply Management Portal. Choose No to hide it. You can update this profile at all levels. (User, Responsibility, Application, Site)

QA:Self-Service Buyer Notification

Choose which Quality seeded workflow is activated when you or your supplier(s) submit Quality results for upload to the database. Choosing Oracle Quality activates QA Self-Service Buyer Notification, which notifies the buyer that the results have been submitted. Choosing User-Defined activates QA Self-Service Buyer Notification: User-Customizable, which you can customize to send notifications to individuals in addition to or other than the Buyer. You can update this profile at all levels (User, Responsibility, Application, Site).

QA:Self-Service Transaction Notification

Choose which workflow is activated when records are not imported. Choose Oracle Quality to activate the QA Self Service Transaction Notification, which automatically notifies the buyer, supplier, and the user who entered the Quality results, that some records failed validation during import. Choose User-Defined to activate the QA Self Service Transaction: User-Customizable, which you can customize to send notifications to individuals in addition to or other than the buyer,

supplier, and user. Update this profile at all levels (User, and System Administrator: User, Responsibility, Application, Site).

> **Additional Information:** Profile Options, *Oracle Quality User's Guide, Release 11 or 11i*; Setting your Personal User Profile, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Release 11 or 11i*

To provide a value for the profile option:

1. As the System Administrator, navigate to the System Profile Values and query for QA:Receive WebSupplier Notification and set value.

2. Save your work.

3. Repeat the query for QA:Self-Service Buyer Notification and QA:Self-Service Transaction Notification and set the values for each.

4. Save your work after you set each value.

Oracle Release Management/Automotive Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
❏	1. Create sourcing rules (recommended)	Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)
❏	2. Validate Release 11i Demand Status Inquiry report (required)	Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)
❏	3. Verify all setup data (required)	Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)
❏	4. Create cumulative (CUM) keys for shipped sales order lines (recommended)	Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)
❏	5. Run CUM Key assignment script (recommended)	Database Administrator
❏	6. Verify CUM shipped quantities of Ship-from Customer Items (recommended)	Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)
❏	7. If CUM does not match, enter CUM adjustments (recommended)	Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)
❏	8. Evaluate forecasts (recommended)	Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)

Step 1: Create sourcing rules (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Supply Chain Planning User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Sourcing Rules**

In previous releases, split type and cross-references were handled in CARaS. This functionality is now controlled through Sourcing Rules. If you want demand for the same item sourced from multiple organizations, ensure that corresponding Supply Chain Planning Sourcing Rules are defined for each Inventory Organization. From the Manufacturing responsibility, choose Supply Chain Planning > Sourcing.

Step 2: Validate Release 11*i* Demand Status Inquiry report (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Release Management User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Demand Processor**
Concurrent Manager required: **Yes**	

After successful processing all upgrade demand schedules through the Demand Processor, print the Release 11*i* Release Management Demand Status Inquiry report (Release Management > Reports) and compare it to the Release 11.0 Demand Status Inquiry report and the CARaS Status Inquiry report. Verify that:

- Firm and forecast demand integrity is maintained from Release 11.0 and CARaS reports

- Release 11.0 firm demand is unchanged in Release 11*i*

- Release 11.0 forecast demand is added to sales order in Release 11*i*

Step 3: Verify all setup data (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Release Management User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Demand Processor**

Before you process any new demand, you should verify that the setup spreadsheet created the processing rules correctly. For example, using the Processing Rules form, verify that the levels at which the processing rules were created are appropriate and correct.

> **Additional Information:**   Processing Rules, *Oracle Release Management User's Guide*

Step 4: Create cumulative (CUM) keys for shipped sales order lines (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Release Management User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Demand Processor, if using Cum Management**

In order to recreate your cumulative (CUM) history, you must first create CUM keys for shipped sales order lines.

1. From the Release Management responsibility, select CUM Workbench.

2. Select options.

3. Press CUM Key to open the CUM Key Details window.

4. Click Create CUM Key.

5. Verify and change billing and shipping address values in the Create CUM Keys window.

6. Click OK.

> **Note:** You cannot open this window if the CUM Management Type of the current Ship-From/Ship-To business entity is No CUM.

If you require more CUM Keys than you can easily create and assign, Oracle recommends that you write a customized script to complete this task.

Step 5: Run CUM Key assignment script (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **DBA**
Reference manual: **No**	Do before anyone uses: **Demand Processor, if using CUM Management**

Run the CUM key assignment script. Enter the Organization Name at the prompt.

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$RLM_TOP/patch/115/sql/RLMCMUPG.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd $APPL_TOP/admin/out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> \
```

```
@$RLM_TOP/patch/115/sql/RLMCMUPG.sql
```

Step 6: Verify CUM shipped quantities of Ship-from Customer Items (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Release Management User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Demand Processor, if using CUM Management**

For each Ship-From Customer Item under CUM Management associated with each trading partner and their corresponding Ship-From/Ship-To relationships, verify that:

- the CUM shipped quantity was calculated accurately based on the CUM Management Rule defined for the Ship-From/Ship-To business entity

- the CUM shipped quantity in Oracle Release Management matches the Our YTD CUM field on the CARaS Status Inquiry report for each CARaS company.

  Additional Information: CUM Workbench, *Oracle Release Management User's Guide*

Step 7: If CUM does not match, enter CUM adjustments (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Release Management User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Demand Processor, if using CUM Management**

If a CUM adjustment is needed to synchronize the CUM shipped quantity of a Ship-From Customer Item under CUM Management with that of CARaS, use the Customer CUM Workbench window to enter a CUM adjustment for Starting CUM Value. This step is needed if:

- the CUM shipped quantity does not match CARaS CUM shipped quantity after CUM Keys are assigned (for example, some shipments pertaining to the CUM Period were not made under Release 11 Oracle Shipping)

- the Customer Item ID was not associated with the Release 11 Oracle Shipping detail (this would prevent a CUM Key from being assigned)

  Additional Information: Entering a CUM Adjustment, *Oracle Release Management User's Guide*

Step 8: Evaluate forecasts (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Product Specialist (VEA/RLM)**
Reference manual: **Oracle Planning**	Do before anyone uses: **Demand Processor**

In previous releases, forecasts were moved into Oracle Planning. Now, you may also move forecasts into Oracle Order Management. If you have changed the location of your forecasts, you must eliminate them from Oracle Planning. From the Manufacturing responsibility, choose Material Planning > Forecast.

Public Sector Product Family

The following Category 6 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Public Sector product family.

Public Sector Budgeting Tasks

Checklist			Performed by
❏	**1.**	Ensure account segment values use correct account type (conditionally required)	Application Specialist
❏	**2.**	Convert dates stored in character columns into canonical format (required)	Database Administrator
❏	**3.**	Convert real numbers stored in character columns into multiradix format (required)	Database Administrator
❏	**4.**	Create baseline budgets from historical worksheets for use in budget revisions for line items and positions (required)	Application Specialist
❏	**5.**	Enable Excel interface functionality (conditionally required)	System Administrator
❏	**6.**	Enable Oracle Financial Analyzer functionality (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Ensure account segment values use correct account type (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**	Performed by: **Application Specialist**
Reference manual: **Oracle Public Sector Budgeting User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Public Sector Budgeting**

Perform this step only if account types were changed in General Ledger.

Ensure that the account types for summary accounts are correctly updated for historical worksheets. In Release 10.7, the account types for summary accounts were automatically set to Owner's Equity. In Release 11 and Release 11*i*, the summary accounts inherit the account type of their account segment value.

Run the following SQL*Plus script to propagate the changes made to General Ledger:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $PSB_TOP/upgrade/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @PSBUACSM.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %PSB_TOP%\upgrade\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @PSBUACSM.sql
```

Step 2: Convert dates stored in character columns into canonical format (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Public Sector Budgeting User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Public Sector Budgeting**

Run the following SQL*Plus script to propagate the changes:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $PSB_TOP/upgrade/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @PSBUDATE.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %PSB_TOP%\upgrade\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @PSBUDATE.sql
```

Step 3: Convert real numbers stored in character columns into multiradix format (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Public Sector Budgeting User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Public Sector Budgeting**

Run the following SQL*Plus script to propagate the changes:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $PSB_TOP/upgrade/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @PSBUNUMB.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %PSB_TOP%\upgrade\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @PSBUNUMB.sql
```

Step 4: Create baseline budgets from historical worksheets for use in budget revisions for line items and positions (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Application Specialist**
Reference manual: **Oracle Public Sector Budgeting User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Public Sector Budgeting**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**	

Release 10.7 users must define a GL Budget Set. To do this, you first run the concurrent program Create Adopted Budget to create a baseline budget for budget revision line items. Then, you run the concurrent program Upload Worksheet to Position Control to create a baseline budget for budget revision positions.

Step 5: Enable Excel interface functionality (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Public Sector Budgeting User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Public Sector Budgeting**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**	

Perform this step only if you will import data from Excel worksheets.

Oracle Public Sector Budgeting provides an interface to transfer data between Public Sector Budgeting and Excel that allows users to modify line item and position worksheets in a spreadsheet. This section describes how to enable this Excel interface.

1. Download the Public Sector Budgeting Excel integration patch from Oracle*MetaLink*.

2. Unzip psbconn.zip. The following files are unzipped: PSBVEXCL.xla and PSBVEXCL.xls.

The PSBVEXCL.xla file is an executable file that is required to enable the Excel interface. The PSBVEXCL.xls file is the source file for PSBVEXCL.xla. The source file is necessary only if users must change the source code.

3. Put PSBVEXCL.xla and PSBVEXCL.xls in a temporary directory that is accessible to the System Administrator. As System Administrator, copy PSBVEXCL.xla to every client machine that will use the Excel interface.

For information on how to set up and use Excel, see Chapter 49, Using Spreadsheets with Public Sector Budgeting Procedures, *Oracle Public Sector Budgeting User's Guide.*

For information on how to use Public Sector Budgeting with Excel, see Chapter 49, Using Spreadsheets with Public Sector Budgeting Procedures, *Oracle Public Sector Budgeting User's Guide.*

Step 6: Enable Oracle Financial Analyzer functionality (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Public Sector Budgeting User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Public Sector Budgeting**

Perform this step only if you will use Public Sector Budgeting with Oracle Financial Analyzer.

Oracle Public Sector Budgeting uses the online analytical processing capabilities of Oracle Financial Analyzer, which are based on the Express multidimensional database, to support comprehensive analysis and planning. This section describes how to enable this functionality.

In Express Server, using Administrator or the command prompt, perform the following tasks.

1. Create a new database named PSBCODE.DB as described in the *Oracle Express Database Administration Guide.*

2. Download the Public Sector Budgeting Oracle Financial Analyzer integration patch from Oracle*Metalink*.

3. Unzip psbtools.zip. The following file is unzipped: PSBCODE.eif.

4. Import all objects in PSBCODE.eif as described in the *Oracle Express Database Administration Guide* and save the database.

5. Move PSBCODE.DB to the Super Administrator's code component directory.

6. On the Financial Analyzer installation system, open ofacdcf.cfg in the Super Administrator's code component directory.

7. Set OFALCNAME to PSBCODE as follows:

   ```
   OFALCNAME=PSBCODE
   ```

8. Save and close ofacdcf.cfg.

9. Create an entry for the Oracle database using SQL*Net8 Easy Config so that Financial Analyzer can connect to the Oracle database.

10. Configure Financial Analyzer for use with Public Sector Budgeting as described in Chapter 50, Financial Analyzer and Public Sector Budgeting Procedures, *Oracle Public Sector Budgeting User's Guide*.

8

Finishing Your Upgrade

This chapter describes the tasks that you need to perform to finish your upgrade. Because these steps affect your Oracle Applications as a whole, they must be performed after all system and product-specific steps are complete. If you perform them out of this order, you may reverse some of the upgrade processes that you have completed in various other steps.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- System Maintenance Upgrade Tasks

- Required Finishing Tasks

- Start Oracle Applications

- Optional Finishing Tasks

System Maintenance Upgrade Tasks

After you have completed and verified your upgrade, you should complete the steps in this section to perform "clean-up" tasks such as dropping unneeded database objects. Note also that some of these steps must be performed for all Applications, not just those that are licensed installed or shared, since all database components are installed and upgraded together.

> **Attention:** Before you perform any of the steps in this chapter, your system administrator should back up the Oracle Applications product files. On a server or stand-alone machine, your database administrator should also back up the Oracle Applications data-base.

❏	**1.**	Drop unneeded database objects (recommended)	Database Administrator
❏	**2.**	Install online help (recommended)	Database Administrator
❏	**3.**	Delete obsolete product files (recommended)	System Administrator
❏	**4.**	Drop obsolete columns in Oracle Assets (recommended)	Database Administrator
❏	**5.**	Drop unnecessary indexes for Oracle Payables (recommended)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Drop unneeded database objects (recommended)

Some Oracle Applications products may contain obsolete database objects that need to be removed after you confirm your upgrade. To help with this task, we supply a SQL*Plus script for each of these products. The script is $ <PROD_TOP>/admin /sql /<prod>dold.sql, where <PROD> (and <prod>) represent the product short name. For NT users, the script is %<PROD>_TOP%\admin\sql\<prod>dold.sql>. For example, PO (Purchasing) or JE (Financials for Europe).

> **Warning: Do not run <prod>dold.sql until you have verified that AutoUpgrade has run successfully to completion, and that your upgrade was successful.**

Each script lists the obsolete objects from Release 11*i*. First, check to see if there is a script for your product. If so, look in the script and determine whether you want to drop the obsolete objects. If you do, enter the following command:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out
```

where <dbname> is the value of your $ORACLE_SID or $TWO_TASK.

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out
```

where <dbname> is the value of your ORACLE_SID or LOCAL.

Then, run the script for your product. For example, you would run the Purchasing script like this:

For UNIX users:
```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PO_TOP/upgrade/sql/podold.sql \
```

```
<PO username> <PO password>
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%PO_TOP%\upgrade\sql\podold.sql \
<PO username> <PO password>
```

> **Note:** To drop obsolete objects for Oracle Financials Common
> Country Features (JG), you run jgdold.sql as described. However,
> this script requires the following parameters: <GL username> <GL
> password> <JG username> <JG password> <AR username> <AR
> password> <FA username> <FA password>

Step 2. Install online help (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Manual**	Users must log off: **No**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**	

Release 11*i* contains two versions of Oracle Applications online help — Commercial
and Public Sector. If you want to install help text, you need to apply the database
driver for the Commercial version (dbcom.drv) first, and then apply the driver for
the Public Sector version (dbgov.drv), if appropriate. Both drivers are located in
$FND_TOP/admin/driver. Use AutoPatch to apply the driver files. NT users will
find the files in %FND_TOP%\admin\driver.

> **Note:** If you have previously customized your help files, you
> must recreate these customizations once you have loaded the new
> online help system. You cannot reapply Release 10.7 or 11.0
> customizations to the Release 11i files. See the *Oracle Applications
> System Administrator's Guide* for more details.

Additional Information: AutoPatch, *Maintaining Oracle
Applications*

Details for installing the online help translations have been provided in the *Oracle
Applications Release Notes* that are shipped with the *Oracle Applications Release 11i
NLS* software distribution.

Step 3: Delete obsolete product files (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **System Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Manual, Oracle Applications Concepts**	Users must log off: **No**
Requires Concurrent Manager: **No**	

After you are satisfied with the upgrade, you can delete the product files for the previous release of Oracle Applications (if you have not done so already). For each product, you may want to retain report output files or customized programs. Output files are stored in the old log and output subdirectories under each product's top directory, or under the log and output directories you created, or under a common directory.

To remove the obsolete files for an old release, change to the top directory of the old release and enter the following command:

For UNIX users:
```
$ rm -rf <old APPL_TOP>
```

Here is an example:

```
$ rm -rf /d01/appl/r10
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> del /s /q <old APPL_TOP>
```

Here is an example:

```
C:\> del /s /q \APPL110
```

> **Note:** If you are upgrading from 10.7SC, you can delete all obsolete client-side product files at this time.

Step 4: Drop obsolete columns in Oracle Assets (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle 8i SQL Reference Manual**	Users must log off: **Yes**

In order to conform to multilingual changes in Oracle Assets, a number of tables have been renamed to indicate they are base tables (_B) and their descriptive columns have been copied to a new table with the same base name, plus a _TL

suffix to indicate they are translated tables. The column in the base table has been set to unused, so you will not be able to view the column in the table. However, you will also not be able to reclaim the space used by that column unless you run a script to drop it.

You can choose to drop obsolete columns to free up space on your database by running facoldr.sql as follows:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $FA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @facoldr.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %FA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @facoldr.sql
```

The following table lists the columns that will be dropped by facoldr.sql.

Table name in prior release	Base table with dropped column	Translated with copied column	Column name to be dropped
FA_ADDITIONS	FA_ADDITIONS_B	FA_ADDITIONS_TL	description
FA_CATEGORIES	FA_CATEGORIES_B	FA_CATEGORIES_TL	description
FA_LOOKUPS	FA_LOOKUPS_B	FA_LOOKUPS_TL	description
FA_LOOKUPS	FA_LOOKUPS_B	FA_LOOKUPS_TL	meaning
FA_LOOKUP_TYPES	FA_LOOKUP_TYPES_B	FA_LOOKUP_TYPES_TL	description
FA_LOOKUP_TYPES	FA_LOOKUP_TYPES_B	FA_LOOKUP_TYPES_TL	meaning
FA_RX_ATTRSETS	FA_RX_ATTRSETS_B	FA_RX_ATTRSETS_TL	user_attribute_set
FA_RX_REP_COLUMNS	FA_RX_REP_COLUMNS_B	FA_RX_REP_COLUMNS_TL	attribute_name

The script requires BATCHSIZE as a parameter, which is the number of records to be processed at each checkpoint.

If you want to make sure the data in the column to be dropped has been copied correctly from the base table to the translated table, confirm that there is an equal number of rows in both tables. You can do this by running a select count from SQL*Plus from the base table and the translated table. Also, you can select the column name in the translated table of the column that will be dropped from the base table to make sure there is data in that column. For example, the upgrade drops the Description column from the FA_ADDITIONS_B table. To ensure that

there is data in the Description column in the FA_ADDITIONS_TL table, you can select Description and confirm that the column has been correctly populated.

Step 5: Drop unnecessary indexes for Oracle Payables (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**	Performed by: **Database Administrator**
Reference manual: **Oracle Payables User's Guide**	Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

You should perform this step to enhance performance and save space in your Oracle Payables application.

> **Attention:**   Do not perform this step if you use Combined Basis Accounting.

If you use Accrual Basis Accounting, move to the admin directory and run the following script to drop the indexes on the CASH_POSTED_FLAG columns in AP_INVOICE_DISTRIBUTIONS and AP_INVOICE_PAYMENTS:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apaccr.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apaccr.sql
```

If you use Cash Basis Accounting, move to the upgrade directory and run the following script to drop the indexes on the ACCRUAL_POSTED_FLAG columns in AP_INVOICE_DISTRIBUTIONS and AP_INVOICE_PAYMENTS:

For UNIX users:
```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apcash.sql
```

For NT users:
```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apcash.sql
```

Required Finishing Tasks

After you complete the upgrade steps in this chapter, you need to perform some additional steps to finish your upgrade.

Review Server Process Control Scripts

Rapid Install configures and starts server processes during installation. It also stores a script for each process in the admin/scripts subdirectory in the Common top directory of your file system. You can use these scripts at any time after your installation to stop and start these processes manually. The scripts are provided as templates that you can customize as required. They include:

Script	UNIX name	NT Name	Owner
Forms Server Listener	adfroctl.sh	adfroctl.cmd	applications user
Forms Metrics Server	adfmsctl.sh	adfmsctl.cmd	applications user
Forms Metrics Client	adfmcctl.sh	adfmcctl.cmd	applications user
Report Review Agent	adalnctl.sh	adalnctl.cmd	applications user
Reports Server	adrepctl.sh	adrepctl.cmd	applications user
TCF SocketServer	adtcfctl.sh	adtcfctl.cmd	applications user
Concurrent Managers	adcmctl.sh	adcmctl.cmd	applications user
Net8 Listener for Oracle8i Enterprise Edition	addlnctl.sh	addlnctl.cmd	oracle user*
HTTP Server	adapcctl.sh	adapcctl.cmd	applications user
Oracle 8*i* database server	addbctl.sh	addbctl.cmd	oracle user*

* Located in the 8.1.6 ORACLE_HOME in the appsutil/scripts subdirectory.

> **Note:** If you need to manually start Windows NT control scripts, use the NT Service Control Panel. The .cmd name is shown to here only to illustrate consistency across platforms.

Please note that the Reports server shutdown script, adrepctl.sh, uses the SID name to identify active report processes. If you have a SID name that is not unique, all processes containing that name will be shut down. For example, if you have a SID named TEST, and a SID named TEST2, shutting down TEST will shut down TEST

and TEST2 report servers. For information about using and modifying these scripts, refer to *Maintaining Oracle Applications.*

Configure Applications Client Software

This section describes how to configure your client software so that you can specify the use of the Oracle Java Virtual Machine (JVM) on a web client. In order to do this, you will need to create a digital signature and repackage JInitiator, then complete the setup so that the client software will be downloaded and installed the first time your users access Oracle Applications with a minimum of manual steps.

About Oracle JInitiator

When you access certain parts of the system (for example, those based on forms or Discoverer), you will need JInitiator to supply the Java virtual machine. The latest version of JInitiator that was available at the time of this product release is on the *Oracle Applications Rapid Install Server Technology* CD under the /util/jinitiator directory in the Common directory of your file system.

Implemented as a plug-in (Netscape Communicator) or ActiveX component (Microsoft Internet Explorer), Oracle JInitiator allows you to specify the use of the Oracle Java Virtual Machine (JVM) on web clients instead of having to use the browser's default JVM.

When it is needed, the browser attempts to load Oracle JInitiator. If Oracle JInitiator has not been previously installed, the browser downloads the necessary installation executable to the PC. Once installed, Oracle JInitiator runs the Oracle Forms Java applet and starts an Oracle Applications session.

Create a Digital Signature and Repackage JInitiator

Java applets that run on a desktop client, by default, can only perform a limited set of operations, for security purposes. Actions that are prohibited by standard applets include accessing the client's file system, or connecting to servers other than the one from which the applet was downloaded. If an applet is "trusted," however, Java will extend the privileges of the applet, allowing it to perform some of these operations. To indicate that an applet is trusted, it must be digitally signed using a digital certificate. Oracle Applications requires that its code run in this trusted mode, so all Java archive files must be digitally signed. You must create your own digital certificate, which will be used to sign JAR files whenever they are updated and rebuilt through AutoPatch.

After you create the certificate, you must distribute it to all desktop clients so it can be imported into an "identity database" that is maintained by JInitiator. When a JAR

file is downloaded, the owner of the digital signature is compared against the entry in the identity databases. If they match, the code contained in the archive is allowed to run in a trusted mode. Oracle Applications provides utilities to help you repackage JInitiator with your certificate, so that when users install Oracle JInitiator, the information in your digital certificate will automatically be installed as well.

Creating your digital certificate

Perform this step *only once* when you install Oracle Applications 11*i* for the first time.

1. Sign on to the applmgr account on any web server.

2. For UNIX, execute APPSORA.env (for UNIX) or APPSORA.cmd (for NT) to set up your environment. Then run $APPL_TOP/ad/11.5.0/bin/adjkey using the -initialize flag.

   ```
   $ adjkey -initialize
   ```

   For NT, run %APPL_TOP%\ad\11.5.0\bin\adjkey.

   ```
   C:\> adjkey -initialize
   ```

   The program asks you a series of questions, such as what your identity name should be. For information on how javakey works, refer to http://java.sun.com/security/usingJavakey.html. Providing the -initialize option causes adjkey to do all the work for you.

   > **Note:** Currently, Applications allows the creation of only one certificate directive file for signing JAR files.

3. When finished, adjkey creates your certificate directive file in the admin directory of your APPL_TOP as a text file (adcert.txt). It contains the name of your certificate's identity for signing JAR files after patching them, and an identity database (identitydb.obj) in the Applications user's home directory.

If you have multiple web servers, you *must* copy the adcert.txt and identitydb.obj files to *each* web server. Use the ftp command. Consult the documentation for your operating system to see how to use ftp.

> **Attention:** Be sure to copy these files from the first machine. DO NOT re-run the adjkey command on other web servers. All Applications Java code should be signed using one digital certificate, unique to your site. Running adjkey multiple times will produce multiple certificates, causing each web server to have JAR files with different signatures.

Repackage JInitiator with your digital certificate

This step modifies JInitiator so that it recognizes your digital signature as a trusted entity. You must perform this step after you first unload your Oracle Applications files, and again *every time* you get a new version of JInitiator.

1. Run the adjbuild.sh script. Do not supply any arguments unless instructed to do so by Oracle Support.

   > **Note:** If you have created multiple digital certificates for your site — for example, a different certificate for your test and production instances — you should copy all the identity (*.cer) files to the admin directory under your APPL_TOP before you run adjbuild.sh. This ensures that all the necessary digital certificates are downloaded to the client machine, so you do not have to download them manually or repackage JInitiator an additional time.

2. When complete, adjbuild.sh creates a new, self-extracting archive called oajinit.exe. This is the file users will download to install and configure JInitiator.

   For example (UNIX users):

   ```
   $ adjbuild.sh
   ```

   Displays usage information for the program

   ```
   $ adjbuild.sh /d2/prodcomn/util/jinitiator \
     /d2/prodcomn/util/jinitiator/jinit11727.exe 1.1.7.27
   ```

   Repackages the version of JInitiator in /d2/prodcomn/util/jinitiator using your digital signature and creates a new archive called oajinit.exe in the current working directory.

For example (NT users):

Run adjbuild.sh in a DOS command window that has the appropriate environment set up. To prepare the environment, run envshell.cmd (located in the APPL_TOP), which will open another DOS command window with all the environment variables set correctly. Then, from this window, run adjbuild.sh as follows:

```
C:\> sh adjbuild.sh D:\oracle\prodcomn\util\jinitiator \
     D:\oracle\prodcomn\util\jinitiator\jinit11727.exe 1.1.7.27
```

Repackages the version of JInitiator under D:\oracle\prodcomn \util\jinitiator using your digital signature and creates a new archive called oajinit.exe in the current working directory.

3. If you have write permission to the OA_HTML directory, adjbuild.sh copies the oajinit.exe archive to that directory. If you don't have write permission to OA_HTML, adjbuild.sh doesn't copy the archive, and you must manually copy oajinit.exe to OA_HTML after adjbuild.sh completes.

The new oajinit.exe archive *must* be copied to the OA_HTML directory so users can download it to their client machines. If it is not copied to this location, users cannot download the new version of JInitiator and must continue to use the old version.

Install Oracle JInitiator

Start the web browser and enter the following URL:

```
http://<web server host>:<web server port>/dev60cgi/f60cgi
```

You should see a small Oracle Applications logo. The installation procedure depends on which web browser that you currently use.

> **Note:** Oracle JInitiator works only on browsers running on the Microsoft Windows 95/98/NT/2000 platforms.

■ Netscape Communicator Web Browser

If you are using the Netscape browser, click on the plug-in icon (a piece of a puzzle). The Plug-in not Loaded window appears. Click Get the Plug-in.

In the Save As dialog window, you can designate the location of the executable to be downloaded. (This behavior may vary if you have set up your web browser differently). Save the JInitiator executable to any location on the client.

After the executable is saved, exit from all your web browser sessions. Go to the location where you downloaded the JInitiator executable and double-click the executable to run it.

InstallShield runs to install Oracle JInitiator. When prompted, click Yes and follow the instructions. You can use the default location for installing Oracle JInitiator. After InstallShield is complete, exit from all your web browser sessions to allow Netscape to load the plug-in properly upon restart.

- Microsoft Internet Explorer

    If you are using Internet Explorer, simply wait for the browser to load the signon HTML file (specifically, it first loads the Oracle JInitiator self-installing executable). Depending on the security settings of your browser, JInitiator may begin downloading automatically, or a Security Warning window may appear, prompting you to install Oracle JInitiator. If the Security Warning window is displayed, click Yes.

    InstallShield runs to install Oracle JInitiator. When prompted, click Yes and follow the instructions. You can use the default location for installing Oracle JInitiator. After InstallShield is complete, exit from all your web browser sessions to allow Microsoft Internet Explorer to load the Oracle Applications certificate that is needed for proper operation of the Applications.

    > **Note:** Active Desktop is currently certified only with Windows 98 and Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.0. You should verify the most current certification levels on Oracle*MetaLink*.

Test Environment Setup Files

Based on your specific configuration, Rapid Install creates environment setup files that set up your Oracle8*i*, Oracle8-based technology stack, and Applications environments. The environment setup files are called <SID>.env (UNIX) or <SID>.cmd (NT) and are located in different directories based on how they are used.

For convenience, Applications provides one file APPSORA.env (UNIX) or APPSORA.cmd (NT) that sets up both the Applications and Oracle8-based technology stack environment. Each file, a description of the environment, the

directory location, and the operating system user that executes it are included in the following table.

Setup File Name	Environment	Directory	O/S User
<SID>.env (UNIX) <SID>.cmd (NT)	Oracle8*i* Enterprise Edition (1)	8.1.6 ORACLE_HOME	oracle
<SID>.env (UNIX) <SID>.cmd (NT)	iAS (2)	Apache ORACLE_HOME	applmgr
<SID>.env (UNIX) <SID>.cmd (NT)	Oracle8-based technology stack (3)	8.0.6 ORACLE_HOME	applmgr
oracle.env (UNIX) oracle.cmd (NT)	Generic ORACLE setup called automatically by <SID>.env or <SID>.cmd	8.1.6, 8.0.6, and iAS	NA
APPSORA.env (UNIX) APPSORA.cmd (NT)	Consolidated setup file (3)	APPL_TOP	applmgr
<SID>.env (UNIX) <SID>.cmd (NT)	Applications (3)	APPL_TOP	NA

(1) database server only
(2) web server only
(3) all servers except database server and web server

You should execute the APPSORA.env (UNIX) or APPSORA.cmd (NT) environment setup file before using any Oracle Applications utility. If you are performing maintenance operations on the database server or Oracle8-based technology stack, then you need only execute the <SID>.env (UNIX) or <SID>.cmd (NT) file located under the ORACLE_HOME (Oracle **8.1.6** or Oracle **8.0.6**, respectively). Ensure you log in as the correct operating system user for the maintenance operation (such as applmgr or oracle) before executing the environment setup file.

> **Note:**   The server process control scripts (such as adcmctl.sh) automatically set up the appropriate environment so this is not required beforehand.

Test each of these scripts now by logging in as the appropriate operating system user and executing the file for each server. For example, log in as oracle on your Oracle8*i* database server machine and run the appropriate script:

For UNIX Bourne shell users:

```
$ . <ORACLE_HOME>/<SID>.env
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> <ORACLE_HOME>/<SID>.cmd
```

> **Suggestion:**   You can set up your login account so that it automatically executes the appropriate environment setup file.

We recommend you print the environment files to document how your installation is configured. Along with the information in Appendix A of this guide, the environment files are an important reference for future administration tasks.

Review Installation Log Files

Rapid Install creates several log files during the installation. The actions performed when configuring or when starting processes are recorded in these file with a .txt file extension, and can be found in the Common file area. For example, UNIX users will find them in COMMON_TOP/admin/install. Windows NT users will find them in COMMON_TOP\admin\install.

Size Your Database

After the upgrade, you will need to resize your production database. Refer to *Maintaining Oracle Applications* for more information.

Change Account Passwords

The default passwords for the SYS account and SYSTEM account of the Oracle Applications database are *change_on_install* and *manager*, respectively. To maintain database security and restrict access to these accounts, you must change these passwords.

> **Additional Information:**   Managing User Privileges and Roles, *Oracle8i Administrator's Guide*

You should also change the Applications passwords. The *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide* and has specific instructions for changing passwords.

Back Up Oracle Applications

Your operating system administrator should back up the Oracle Applications product files. Your database administrator should also back up the Oracle Applications database.

Start Oracle Applications

You start Oracle Applications and access all ERP, CRM, BIS, and Self-Service Web Applications products from the Oracle Applications Personal Homepage. To begin, go to the Self-Service Web Applications login page located at the following URL:

```
http://<apache host>.<domain name>:<web port id>/OA_HTML/<LANGUAGE_
CODE>/ICXINDEX.htm
```

For example:

```
http://oraapps1.oracle.com:8000/OA_HTML/US/ICXINDEX.htm
```

The system administrator should log in the first time using the sysadmin login account that is pre-configured in the Applications installation. Use the System Administrator responsibility to launch an Applications Forms session where the system administrator can complete the implementation steps..

> **Additional Information:** Set Up the Personal Homepage Feature, Appendix F in the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Optional Finishing Tasks

Set Up National Language Support (NLS)

If you have an NLS installation *and* your base language is American English, your upgrade is not complete until you have installed the NLS software for all active languages. For instructions, see Chapter 6, Finishing your Installation, in *Installing Oracle Applications*.

> **Note:** If your base language is *not* American English, you need to perform this task before you perform any post-upgrade tasks. *If you do not install NLS in the correct sequence, you will not be able to log on to Oracle Applications after you run AutoUpgrade.*

Set Up Business Intelligence System

Oracle Business Intelligence System (BIS) is a collection of enterprise business indicators (Reports), supported by a suite of analytical workbooks (Discoverer), all integrated with an alert mechanism to pro-actively communicate operational performance to the management team. BIS is a web-based application — users work from a configurable home page where they view actual business activity, graphs of performance measures and variances, and launch all reports and analysis. BIS also provides a library of key performance indicators (KPIs) to benchmark actual performance against multiple targets, such as industry best practices, key competitors, personal goals, or corporate commitments.

To set up and begin using BIS, you need to perform the tasks outlined in the *BIS Implementation Guide*.

> **WARNING:** Information about implementing Discoverer has changed. Refer to the updated instructions in Oracle*MetaLink* before you begin to install or set up any of the BIS components. If you do not follow the updated instructions, your BIS implementation may fail.

Convert Database to Multiple Organization (Multi-Org) Architecture

The Rapid Install Vision Demo database is enabled for Multi-Org. However, the production and test databases are not. If you want Multi-Org architecture in the production or test environments, log in as the Application login account, execute the appropriate environment file, and follow the instructions about using the AD Administration utility in *Maintaining Oracle Applications*.

Additional Information: *Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications*

Convert to Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC)

The Rapid Install Vision Demo database is enabled for MRC. However, the production and test databases are not. If your production or test environment

requires multiple reporting currencies, refer to the instructions for installing and implementing MRC in *Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications*.

> **Note:** If you plan to install MRC for your organization, you should turn on Invokers Rights to save tablespace, reduce dual maintenance, and increase security. See *Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications* for complete information.

Understand System Administration Tasks

You should be completely familiar with the information in the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*. It contains important information about Oracle Applications.

Implement Product and Country-specific Functionality

In addition to the post-upgrade tasks documented in this manual, there may be additional product-specific implementation or setup tasks you need to complete to realize all the functionality built into Release 11*i*— for both newly licensed products and those that may have new functionality in this release. Before you begin to use your upgraded Oracle Applications products, you *must* refer to the implementation guide or implementation section of the user's guide associated with any Oracle Applications product that you currently use, or plan to use.

In addition to these references, you should always check Oracle*MetaLink* for the latest product information.

Understand Oracle Applications Maintenance Tasks

You should be completely familiar with the information in *Maintaining Oracle Applications*. It contains important details about administration utilities, as well as manual maintenance tasks.

Index

E

F

P